

Operations Management User Guide

version 1.26



FranchiseOps version 1.198-1.306

Copyright © Franchise Cloud Solutions, 2022. All rights reserved.

Information in this document is subject to change without notice. The software described in this document is furnished under a license agreement or nondisclosure agreement. The software may be used or copied only in accordance with the terms of those agreements. No part of this publication may be reproduced, stored in a retrieval system, or transmitted in any form or any means electronic or mechanical, including photocopying and recording for any purpose other than the purchaser's personal use without the written permission of Franchise Cloud Solutions.

Franchise Cloud Solutions Sydney, NSW 1 800 227 881 www.franchisecloudsolutions.com

Used with permission:

 ® Salesforce, AppExchange are registered trademarks of salesforce.com. Oracle and Java are registered trademarks of Oracle and/or its affiliates.

 [™] Salesforce Platform is a trademark of salesforce.com, Xero a trademark of Xero Limited, Google Maps a trademark of Google LLC.

 Other names may be trademarks of their respective owners.

Throughout this guide standard page layouts are shown. Your page layouts may look different based on implementation-specific requirements.

S Z

CHAPTER 1 Getting Started

Introduction	
Where to start	
Where to start	4
How Salesforce organizes information	5
Overview	6
Franchise setup	6
Job allocation exception handling	7
Franchise operations review & improvement	7
End of contract	7
How to login to Salesforce	8
How to browse information using List Views	
Key list views	
How to customize a list view	
How to create your own list view	
How to add columns to a list view	
How to share list views	

CHAPTER 2 Working with Contracts

Understanding contracts	
Contract Statuses	
How to create a contract	
Contract fees	
Understanding contract fees	
How to view all fees on a contract	
How to add a contract fee	
How to adjust a contract fee	53
How to vary a contract	
How to renew a contract	60

How to cease a contract	63
How to generate contract documents	65
How to issue contract documents	69
How to sign issued contract documents	72
How to activate a contract	73

CHAPTER 3 Franchise Profile Accounts

Understanding franchise profile accounts	77
Franchise setup	78
How to create a franchise profile account	78
How to add a territory	80
How to add a contact	81
Franchise commencement	86
Completing franchise information	
How to configure a franchise for job allocation	
How to add a company asset	
How to add an insurance policy	91
Pre-commencement checklist	92
How to find contract fees for a franchise	96
Franchise cessation	
How to discontinue a franchise	
How to transfer franchise ownership	
How to configure a franchise profile for job allocation	
Mandatory settings	
Travel distance origin	105
Maximum travel distance	
Business hours	
Daily and weekly offer targets	
Territory only job offers	
Temporary unavailability of franchisee	111
Off system franchisees	
Job notifications	115

CHAPTER 4 Understanding Job Allocation

Configuration potential within the job allocation system	
Duplicate job checking rules	
Job eligibility rules	
Distance calculation options	
Exclusiveness of territory	
Parallel vs. sequential job offers	
Queuing job offers	
Throttling job offers	
Ranking rules	
Regional and isolated territories	
Job allocation process	
Introduction	
How it works	
Step-by-step	
Geolocation	

Territory matching	
Duplicate matching	
Job Potential Generation	
Job Potential Eligibility & Ranking	130
Job Offer Sequencing	
Job offers	
Job Statuses	
Job Offer Sequencing Job offers Job Statuses	

CHAPTER 5 Managing Job Allocation

Job allocation management	
Exception monitoring	
How to take action	
How to check for unassigned jobs	
How to check for duplicate jobs	
How to check for unallocated jobs	
What to do when the job address is not recognized	
How to restart job allocation	
How to force allocate a job	
How to manually allocate a job	
How to manually close a job	
Troubleshooting job allocation	166
Allocation process	
Status: Unassigned	
A franchisee is not receiving job offers	
No franchisees are receiving job offers via SMS	
SMS was received but no email	
Email was received but no SMS	
A job is allocated but no offer was received by the franchisee	
A job was allocated to the wrong franchisee	

CHAPTER 6 Working with Management Logs

Understanding management logs	176
Meeting	
Induction	
Field audit	
Business review	
How to create a management log entry	
How to record attendees and apologies	
How to record meeting minutes	
How to record supporting evidence	
How to view all management logs for a particular franchise	

CHAPTER 7 Working with Audits

Understanding audits	
How audits appear to end users	
How to create an audit record	
Creating an audit attached to a Management Log	
How to complete an audit on desktop	
How to work with attachments that are not images	

How to work with the audit resource file	
Data in the audit resource file	
How data in each audit resource column is displayed	

CHAPTER 8 Working with Expenses

Understanding expenses)
How to enter an expense	 1

CHAPTER 9 Working with Suppliers & Supplier Invoices

Adding a supplier	
Creating a supplier invoice	

CHAPTER 10 Working with Material Price Lists

Understanding material price lists	234
Creating a material price list	
Adding a material	237

CHAPTER 11 Customer Communications

Working with franchisees on the phone	
How to locate the right record	
How to capture the outcomes of phone calls	
How to send an email	247
How to confirm a scheduled appointment with a franchisee	
Working with emails and templates	
How to set up an email signature block	
How to edit email template headers and footers	
How to create a custom email template	
How to create a Quote email template	
How to create an Invoice email template	
Working with emails and syncing	
Understanding email sending, responses and syncing	
How to send all emails to my inbox	
Granting EAC sync permission	
Installing the Salesforce extension for Office 365	
Installing the Chrome Salesforce extension for GSuite	
Logging email using Salesforce extensions	
Logging events using Salesforce extensions	

CHAPTER 12 Working with Customer Feedback

Understanding customer feedback	290
Job satisfaction	
How to view job satisfaction survey questions	
How to remove someone from job satisfaction surveys	292
Customer feedback	294
How to view customer complaints and compliments	294
How to process new customer complaints and compliments	
How to resolve customer complaints and compliments	299

CHAPTER 12 Working with the Job Booking Form

How to change job types	301
How to change how you heard of us	
How to add or remove fields	

CHAPTER 13 Working with Activity Lists

Understanding activity lists	306
Applying an activity list	307
Working with activity list tasks	310

CHAPTER 14 Working with Reports

Understanding reports	
Standard reports	
Compliance reports	
Franchise Operations Reports	
Head Office Reports	
SMS Management Reports	
DocuSign reports	
How to export a report	
How to print a report	

CHAPTER 15 Accessing Help and Support

Product Documentation	
Knowledge Base	
Contacting Customer Support	
Raising Service Requests	
Granting Account Login Access	

viii

r LL С

Getting Started

. 2
3
4
. 5
. 6
. 6
. 7
. 7
. 7
. 8
9
12
15
18
21
24

Introduction

Franchise Cloud Solutions Operations Management is designed especially for the franchise industry. It provides an efficient platform for franchise businesses to manage

- » distributing job opportunities to the optimal franchisee for each job
- » planning, quoting and scheduling jobs
- » efficient and accurate generation of quotes and invoices
- » collection of payments
- » management of customer feedback

Operations Management will help any franchisor

- » increase administrative efficiency
- » reduce errors and omissions
- » comply with tax codes
- » manage on-going relationships with your franchisees

Operations Management provides the tools you need to efficiently manage your business. Together with other Franchise Cloud Solutions products, your business will have all the IT capabilities it needs to grow and win in the marketplace.

Where to start

Operations Management is an application especially designed for the franchise industry running within the award-winning and market-leading Salesforce Platform.

If you are new to Salesforce, you may benefit from familiarizing yourself with Salesforce basic skills. Refer to the Salesforce User Guide, <u>Get Started with Salesforce</u>.



For more Salesforce user guides, See <u>Salesforce Downloadable User</u> <u>Guides</u>.

Where to start

Operations Management is an application especially designed for the franchise industry running within the award-winning and market-leading Salesforce Platform.

If you are new to Salesforce, you may benefit from familiarizing yourself with Salesforce basic skills. Refer to the Salesforce User Guide, <u>Get Started with Salesforce</u>.



For more Salesforce user guides, See <u>Salesforce Downloadable User</u> <u>Guides</u>.

How Salesforce organizes information

Salesforce organizes data into different types of records. Each type of record is stored together.

All accounts are stored in the list of **Accounts**. All Invoices are stored in the list of **Invoices**, etc.

The Salesforce menu provides you access to each different type of record.



Clicking on any of these menus shows you a list of records of this type.



Overview

Operations Management allows you to setup and manage a network of franchise businesses. Operations Management has four areas of focus

- » Franchise setup
- » Job allocation exception handling
- » Franchise operations review & improvement
- » End of contract

Franchise setup

When your organization has licensed Franchise Recruitment, the core franchise records are transferred into Operations Management when the sale closes. When you are operating with Operations Management alone, you will need to obtain the franchise contract and manually enter the details into Operations Management.



Once the core franchise records are in place, the Franchise Profile Account must be configured for job allocation. When that is complete, the system administrator can then configure a user account for the franchisee and additional user accounts for the franchise's employees. The system is then ready for the franchisee and employees to be onboarded and trained.

Job allocation exception handling

There is an on-going need for operational overview of the Job allocation process in order to handle exceptions. Someone must be responsible for handling

- » unallocated jobs
- » duplicate jobs
- » aged jobs

Franchise operations review & improvement

Operations Management provides facilities for operational review and improvement of franchise operations. Firstly, Operations Management provides Management Logs, which allows the franchisor to document reviews, audits, actions and decisions to be captured into a log. Secondly, Operations Management contains capacity to capture customer feedback through a random sampling of completed jobs. Both these facilities provide information to franchisees on how they can operate their businesses more effectively.

End of contract

Operations Management also provides support for managing franchisee transitions when the contract term expires. It provides the ability to continue the franchise agreement with further terms, to put in place a new contract, to cease trading and hand the territory back to the master franchisor, or to sell the territory to another franchisee.

How to login to Salesforce

For assistance with logging into Salesforce, see the <u>Get Started with Salesforce</u> online help.

How to browse information using List Views

When you open a Salesforce menu, you are unlikely to see all the information that Salesforce is storing. The system might be quite unwieldy if it did show you all its information. To help prevent information overload, what it does is show a subset of the information by use of what Salesforce calls a "List View".

Each List View shows a certain subset of information. Each Salesforce menu already has multiple List Views, and you can create your own.

When you first open a menu, the first List View you see is likely to show you an empty list. Salesforce is showing you things you have viewed recently. This is known as the **Recently Viewed** List View.



If this is your first use and you have not yet viewed anything, you will see an empty list.

To see some data

1. Click on Recently Viewed.

• - ®				Q Se	arch Job Offe	ers and	more						*		?	Ļ	6
	Operations Manag	Home	Chatter	Accounts	 Contact 	ts 🗸	Contracts	~	Management Lo	ogs 🔨	 Invoices 	~	Job Offers 🗸	More	•		
₿ž	Job Offers Recently Viewed																
0 items	Accepted Job Offers												\$ • Ⅲ •	C		C	T
	All Job Offers							ANCHI	SE 🗸	r FR	ANCHISEE		✓ STATUS			~	
	Declined Job Offers																
	Job Offers Today																
	Pending Job Offers							ffers re	cently.								
	Queued Job Offers							WS.									
	 Recently Viewed 																

"Recently Viewed" is the name of a list that shows items you have viewed recently. Now that you have clicked on it, you can see the names of other lists. 2. Click on any list containing the word "All."

•-@				Q Se	arch Job Offe	rs and	more					*		?	Ļ	6
	Operations Manag	Home	Chatter	Accounts	✓ Contact	s 🗸	Contracts 🗸	Management	t Logs 🥆	 Invoices 	~	Job Offers 🗸	More	•		. mar
Đ	Job Offers Recently Viewed V															
0 item	s Accepted Job Offers											\$ • Ⅲ •	C		C	T
	All Job Offers						ANC	HISE	V FR/	ANCHISEE		✓ STATUS			~	
	Declined Job Offers															
	Job Offers Today															
	Pending Job Offers						ffers	recently.								
	Queued Job Offers						WS.									
	 Recently Viewed 															

If there is data in your system, this list is likely to show it.

3. You can now see the data displayed by this list view.

•-®	Operations Manag	Home Chatter	Q Search Job Offers Accounts ∨ Contacts	and more Contracts V Management Logs V	Invoices 🗸 🗸	bo Offers v More v 🗸
Đ	Job Offers All Job Offers –					
35 ite	ems • Sorted by Job Offer Number • U	pdated a few seconds a	go			\$\$* III C 💉 C Y
	JOB OFFER NU 1 V	JOB	✓ COMMENTS ✓	FRANCHISE V FRANCHISEE V	STATUS	✓ CREATED DATE ✓
1	JON-00018	JN-00039		Tile Rescue Balm	Timed Out	6/10/2017 11:3 💌
2	JON-00022	JN-00047		FCS Greenwich	Declined	6/10/2017 1:54 💌
3	JON-00027	JN-00067		FCS Bondi	Timed Out	6/10/2017 8:00 💌
4	JON-00058	JN-00090		FCS Bondi	Timed Out	18/10/2017 5:3 💌
5	JON-00090	JN-00123		FCS Bondi	Timed Out	3/11/2017 3:33 💌
6	JON-00094	JN-00124		FCS Bondi	Accepted	3/11/2017 6:36 💌
7	JON-00099	JN-00126		FCS Bondi	Timed Out	3/11/2017 7:12 💌
8	JON-00102	JN-00127		FCS Bondi	Timed Out	3/11/2017 7:58 💌
9	JON-00111	JN-00142		FCS Bondi	Accepted	12/02/2018 12: 💌
10	JON-00116	JN-00148		FCS Bondi Beach	Accepted	19/02/2018 1:2 💌

4. Now re-open the list view and notice the different types of views.



Each list potentially contains a different subset of records. Salesforce uses list views to make the amount of data you can see manageable.

5. Now click away to a different tab.

•••®			Q Search Job Offers	and more		★▼ 🖬 ? 🐥	0
***	Operations Manag	Home Chatter	Accounts 🗸 Contacts	✓ Contracts ✓ Management Logs ✓	Invoices 🗸	Job Offers 🗸 More 🔻	
B2 35 iter	Job Offers All Job Offers ▼ ms • Sorted by Job Offer Number • U	Jpdated a few seconds ag	30			\$•• Ⅲ• C × C	Y
	JOB OFFER NU 1 V	JOB	✓ COMMENTS ✓	FRANCHISE V FRANCHISEE V	STATUS	✓ CREATED DATE ✓	
1	JON-00018	JN-00039		Tile Rescue Balm	Timed Out	6/10/2017 11:3	•
2	JON-00022	JN-00047		FCS Greenwich	Declined	6/10/2017 1:54	•
3	JON-00027	JN-00067		FCS Bondi	Timed Out	6/10/2017 8:00	•
4	JON-00058	JN-00090		FCS Bondi	Timed Out	18/10/2017 5:3	•
5	JON-00090	JN-00123		FCS Bondi	Timed Out	3/11/2017 3:33	•
6	JON-00094	JN-00124		FCS Bondi	Accepted	3/11/2017 6:36	•
7	JON-00099	JN-00126		FCS Bondi	Timed Out	3/11/2017 7:12	•
8	JON-00102	JN-00127		FCS Bondi	Timed Out	3/11/2017 7:58	•
9	JON-00111	JN-00142		FCS Bondi	Accepted	12/02/2018 12:	•
10	JON-00116	JN-00148		FCS Bondi Beach	Accepted	19/02/2018 1:2	•

You will see the list of recently viewed **Accounts**, which will be empty if you have not yet viewed any.

6. Now come back to the original tab.

• • ®				Q Searc	h Job Offers and	l more				2 ?	. 🔊
***	Operations Manag	Home	Chatter	Accounts 🗸	Contacts 🗸	Contracts 🗸	Management Log	gs 🗸 Invoices 🗸	Job Offers 🗸 Mo	re 🔻	
0 iten	Job Offers Recently Viewed 🔻								\$ • . ⊂		ĊY
	JOB OFFER NUMBER	✓ JOB		~ со	MMENTS	✓ FRANCH	ISE 🗸	FRANCHISEE	✓ STATUS		~
					You haven't vie Try sw	wed any job offers re ritching list views.	ecently.				

If you see an empty list, it is because Salesforce is showing you the **Recently Viewed** list.

While this behavior might be surprising when you are just getting started, in practice it is very useful. Most of the time, we want to work on records we have recently viewed. Of course, if you had clicked on one of the records, this list wouldn't be empty. It would show the item you had clicked on.

Take some time to go through each of the list views in the system. Get to know the sort of available list views. Understanding what is available will help you find the right information at the right time.

Key list views

In addition to the standard Salesforce list views, Operations Management ships with its own range of useful list views. Familiarizing yourself with these list views will help you quickly become proficient in locating information. For most of the list views in the table, you will see data relating to your own business entity and records related to any business entity ultimately attached to yours (i.e. subsidiary master franchises or franchisees). A summary of the standard list views appears in the table below.

Record type	List Name	Description
	Business Accounts	The list of business customers.
	Individual Accounts	The list of potential franchisees (related to your business entity) and individual and household customers (owned by franchisees).
Accounts	Franchise Pro- file Accounts	The list of Franchise Profile Accounts. These are the entit- ies operating the licensed franchise territories. Each Franchise Profile Account belongs to a Master Franchise Profile.
	Employment Candidate Accounts	Any accounts representing potential employees.
	Master Franchise Pro- file Accounts	The list of accounts representing Master Franchisor entit- ies. Each Master Franchise Profile contains a list of Franchise Profile Accounts and Territories belonging to it.
	All Business Contacts	Records representing individuals that are attached to business customers of your franchisees.
Contacts	All Franchise Contacts	Records representing individuals that are attached to Franchise Profile Accounts. These typically represent franchisees, potential franchisees, their business asso- ciates and employees.

Record type	List Name	Description
	All Activated Contracts	Contracts that are activated.
	All Draft Con- tracts	Contracts that are draft.
Contracts	Expiring Con- tracts	Contracts that are expiring in the next seven months.
	Expiring Con- tracts, Noti- fications Pending	Contracts that are expiring in the next seven months who have been sent a notification.
Customer Feedback	Customer Feedback Queue	Customer feedback that has been received and not yet processed.
	Head Office Invoices - Not Sent	Generated invoices that have not yet been sent to fran- chisees.
Invoices	Head Office Invoices - Sent	Generated invoices that have been sent to franchisees.
	All Jobs	The list of all jobs in the system.
	All Jobs with Line Items	The list of all jobs that have been quoted or invoiced.
Jobs	Job Allocation Queue	If your implementation uses Job Allocation, jobs that can- not be automatically assigned to a franchisee are placed in the Job Allocation Queue. The name of this queue may vary depending on your implementation. Check with your system administrator to determine the name of your organization's Job Allocation Queue.

Record type	List Name	Description
	Pending Job Offers	The list of jobs currently offered to you. You can accept, decline or ignore these job offers. Ignored job offers expire.
	Job Offers Today	The list of job offers offered today.
Job Offers	Accepted Job Offers	The list of job offers that are accepted.
	Declined Job Offers	The list of job offers that were declined.
	All Job Offers	The complete list of job offers.

How to customize a list view

Once you have become familiar with the list views that are already available, you might want to configure your own list view to meet your particular need.



Imagine you want to see the list of accounts that are belong to a specific territory. You could create a list view to show **Accounts for Territory**.

To modify an existing list view

1. Select the list view you want to copy.

•-®			Q Sear	ch Accounts and m	ore			* • ? •	. 🗟
• • • • • • • • •	Operations Manag	g Home C	hatter Accounts 🗸	Contacts 🗸	Contracts 🗸 Manaj	gement Logs 🗸 🛛 I	nvoices 🗸 Invoice Ru	ins 🗸 More 🔻	. mar
50+ ite	Accounts All Accounts – ems • Sorted by Account Na	ame • Updated a few sec	onds ago				较 *		New
	ACCOUNT N 1 V	ACCOUNT RE 🗸	BILLING SUBU 🗸	BILLING STATE	✓ BILLING POST ∖	PHONE	V EMAIL V	ACCOUNT OW >	~
1	Alexander Hamilton	Individual	Bondi Beach		2026	0431661889		swalker	•
2	Alistair Campbell	Individual	Vaucluse	NSW	2030	0404040404	loryn.jenkins@fra	swalker	•
3	Bestway Marketing	Business	Sydney	NSW	2022	1300 760 102		sadmi	•
4	Bondi Web Design	Business	North Bondi	NSW	2026	(02) 9300 6003	info@bondiwebde	swalker	•
5	Bower Healthcare	Business	Sydney	NSW	2022	(02) 9221 8649		sadmi	•
6	Business Backup C	Business	Sydney	NSW	2025	(02) 9387 7784		ofran	•
7	David Jones	Business	Sydney	NSW	2022			sadmi	•
8	FCS Artarmon	Franchise Profile				0431 668 997	jill.kennedy@gmai	ofina	•
9	FCS Australia	Master Franchise						ooffi	•
10	FCS Bondi	Franchise Profile	Bondi	NSW	2026			socon	•

2. Open the List View Control and choose Clone.

•			Q Sear	ch Accounts and m	iore			★ - ■ ?	. 🔊
	Operations Manag	g Home C	Chatter Accounts 🗸	Contacts 🗸	Contracts 🗸 N	lanagement Logs 🗸	Invoices 🗸 Invoice	Runs 🗸 More 🔻	
50+ it	Accounts All Accounts ems - Sorted by Account Na	ame • Updated a minute	e ago			1-	\$ *		New
	ACCOUNT N 1 V	ACCOUNT RE V	BILLING SUBU 🗸	BILLING STATE	✓ BILLING POST	🗸 PHONE	LIST VIEW CONTROLS	CCOUNT OW	~
1	Alexander Hamilton	Individual	Bondi Beach		2026	0431661889	New	swalker	•
2	Alistair Campbell	Individual	Vaucluse	NSW	2030	0404040404	Clone	swalker	-
з	Bestway Marketing	Business	Sydney	NSW	2022	1300 760 102		sadmi	•
4	Bondi Web Design	Business	North Bondi	NSW	2026	(02) 9300 600:		. swalker	•
5	Bower Healthcare	Business	Sydney	NSW	2022	(02) 9221 864		sadmi	•
6	Business Backup C	Business	Sydney	NSW	2025	(02) 9387 778 [,]		ofran	•
7	David Jones	Business	Sydney	NSW	2022			sadmi	•
8	FCS Artarmon	Franchise Profile				0431 668 997		. ofina	•
9	FCS Australia	Master Franchise						ooffi	•
10	FCS Bondi	Franchise Profile	Bondi	NSW	2026			socon	

The Clone List View dialog box appears.

3. Enter the new List Name and press Save.



The newly named list view appears together with its filter pane.

4. Choose the Add Filter link to add an extra filter condition.

•-®				Q 5	Search /	Accounts an	nd more						*	₿?	. 👼
0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0	Operations N	lanag	Home Cha	atter Accounts	~	Contacts	✓ Contracts	~	Management Lo	gs 🗸 I	nvoice	is 🗸	Invoice Runs 🗸	More 🔻	
50+ ite	Accounts Accounts fo	r Territory	ated a few secor	nds ago									\$ • III •	C 🔪	New
	ACCO ↑ ∨	ACCOU 🗸	BILLING N	✓ BILLING ✓	BILLI	ING 🗸 I	phone 🗸	EMAIL	L 🗸 ACCOU	🗸		Filters			\rightarrow
1	Alexander H	Individual	Bondi Beach		2026		0/04664000				-				
2	Alistair Cam	Individual	Vaucluse	NSW	2030	Field					_				
3	Bestway Ma	Business	Sydney	NSW	2022	# Cor	ntacts			•	JI	Show All ac	r me counts		
4	Bondi Web	Business	North Bondi	NSW	2026										
5	Bower Healt	Business	Sydney	NSW	2022	Operato	or					Matchi	ng all of these filters		
6	Business Ba	Business	Sydney	NSW	2025	equal	ls			•		New	Filter*		×
7	David Jones	Business	Sydney	NSW	2022						1				
8	FCS Artarmon	Franchise P				Value						Add Fil	ter		Remove All
9	FCS Australia	Master Fran													
10	FCS Bondi	Franchise P	Bondi	NSW	2026						_ [Add Fil	ter Logic		
11	FCS Bondi B	Franchise P	Bondi	NSW	2026					Done					

5. Use the Field, Operator and Value fields to set the new condition, then press Done.

• - ®					Q Se	earch	Accounts	and m	ore							*	•?	, 🛉	6
***	Operations N	lanag	Home C	hatter	Accounts	~	Contacts	~	Contracts	~	Management Logs	~	Invoice	5 🗸	Invoice Rur	ns 🗸	More	•	
50+ it	Accounts Accounts fo	or Territory	▼ ated 2 minute	es ago											\$ ×	•	C'	Ne	ew T
	ACCO 🕇 🗸	ACCOU 🗸	BILLING	∨ BILI	LING 🗸	BILL	.ING 🗸	РНО	NE 🗸	EMAI	L 🗸 ACCOU	\sim		Can	cel			Save	-
1	Alexander H	Individual	Bondi Bead	ch		202	6			<mark>ר</mark> ף									
2	Alistair Cam	Individual	Vaucluse	NSV	v	203	0 Field	_		U			_	Char					
3	Bestway Ma	Business	Sydney	NSV	v	202	2 Frai	nchise						All a	ccounts				
4	Bondi Web	Business	North Bon	di NSV	V	202	6			9									
5	Bower Healt	Business	Sydney	NSV	v	202	Opera	tor					-1	Match	ing all of thes	e filters			
6	Business Ba	Business	Sydney	NSV	V	202	5 equ	als					15	New	Filter*				×
7	David Jones	Business	Sydney	NSV	v	202	2 Value			8			ſ						
8	FCS Artarmon	Franchise P					ECS	Bond	Boach	U			٦L	Add Fi	lter			Remo	ove All
9	FCS Australia	Master Fran					103	bonu	Deach	-			- 1	Add Ei	Iter Logic				
10	FCS Bondi	Franchise P	Bondi	NSV	V	202	6			4			- I	Aud Fi	iter Logic				
11	FCS Bondi B	Franchise P	Bondi	NSV	V	202	6			-		one							

6. Now press Save.

• - ®	Q Search Accounts and more										*	•?	, Ť	6
***	Operations N	lanag	Home Chat	ter Accounts	✓ Contacts	✓ Contract	s 🗸 Mai	nagement Logs	✓ Inv	voices 🗸 Invoice Ru	ins 🗸	More	•	
50+ it	Accounts Accounts for Territory 50+ items - Sorted by Account Name - Updated 5 minutes ago													
	ACCO ↑ ∨	ACCOU 🗸	BILLING 🗸	BILLING 🗸	BILLING 🗸	phone 🗸	EMAIL	V ACCOU	~	Cancel			Save	-
1	Alexander H	Individual	Bondi Beach		2026	0431661889		swalker	•					
2	Alistair Cam	Individual	Vaucluse	NSW	2030	0404040404	loryn.jenkir	swalker		Show mo				
з	Bestway Ma	Business	Sydney	NSW	2022	1300 760 1		sadmi		All accounts				
4	Bondi Web	Business	North Bondi	NSW	2026	(02) 9300 6	info@bond	i swalker	•					
5	Bower Healt	Business	Sydney	NSW	2022	(02) 9221 8		sadmi		Matching all of the	se filters			
6	Business Ba	Business	Sydney	NSW	2025	(02) 9387 7		ofran	•	Franchise*				×
7	David Jones	Business	Sydney	NSW	2022			sadmi		equals FCS Bon	ai Beach			
8	FCS Artarmon	Franchise P				0431 668 9	jill.kennedy	ofina		Add Filter			Remo	ove All
9	FCS Australia	Master Fran						ooffi	•	Add Filter Logic				
10	FCS Bondi	Franchise P	Bondi	NSW	2026			socon	•	ride riner Logic				

7. Press the arrow to remove the **Filters** pane.

•			Q 5	Q Search Accounts and more							• ? • 👼	
***	Operations N	lanag	Home Chat	ter Accounts	✓ Contacts	s 🗸 Contra	acts 🗸	Manage	ment Logs	✓ Invoi	ces 🗸 Invoice Runs 🗸	More 🔻 🎤
5 item	Accounts for Territory Sitems - Sorted by Account Name - Filtered by Franchise - Updated a few seconds ago											New
	ACCO ↑ ∨	ACCOU 🗸	BILLING 🗸	BILLING 🗸	BILLING 🗸	PHONE	✓ EMAII	LV	ACCOU	\sim	Filters	→
1	Alistair Cam	Individual	Vaucluse	NSW	2030	040404040	4 loryn.j	enkin	swalker	•		
2	Bondi Web	Business	North Bondi	NSW	2026	(02) 9300 6	info@	bondi	swalker	•		
3	James Brown	Individual	Bondi Junct	NSW	2026	043188966	5 mike+	test@	swalker	•	All accounts	
4	Martin New	Individual	Bondi Beach		2026	043577844	9		swalker			
5	Ronald Pham	Individual							swalker	•	Matching all of these filters	
											Franchise equals FCS Bondi Beach	×
											Add Filter	Remove All
											Add Filter Logic	

Now you can see your newly modified list view.

• - ®			Q	Search Accounts and r	more			★ • • ?	. 🔄
••••	Operations Manag	g Home	Chatter Account	s 🗸 Contacts 🗸	Contracts 🗸 M	lanagement Logs 🗸 🛛 Inv	voices 🗸 🛛 Invoice Ru	uns 🗸 More 🔻	
5 iter	Accounts Accounts for Ter	ritory 🔻	ise • Updated a few sec	onds ago			\$ ·	≣ • C 💉	New C
	ACCOUNT N 🕇 🗸	ACCOUNT RE	✓ BILLING SUBU	🗸 BILLING STATE	→ BILLING POST.	🗸 PHONE 🗸	EMAIL V	ACCOUNT OW	~
1	Alistair Campbell	Individual	Vaucluse	NSW	2030	0404040404	a.campbell@gmail	swalker	•
2	Bondi Web Design	Business	North Bondi	NSW	2026	(02) 9300 6003	info@bondiwebde	swalker	
з	James Brown	Individual	Bondi Junction	NSW	2026	0431889665	mike+test@franch	swalker	•
4	Martin Newberry	Individual	Bondi Beach		2026	0435778449		swalker	•
5	Ronald Pham	Individual						swalker	•

Making list views customized for your requirements will make your work much more efficient and enjoyable.

How to create your own list view

Creating your own list view can be a useful way to quickly access data.



In this example, we're going to create a list view to show us contacts in our State or Territory.

To create a new list view

1. Open the List View Control and choose New.

• - ®		All 💌	Q Search Contacts ar	nd more			★ • 8 ?	. 🔊
	Operations Mana	ig Home	Chatter Accounts 🗸	Contacts 🗸	Contracts 🗸	Management Logs	✓ More ▼	Ň
3 item	Contacts Recently Viewe ns • Updated a few second	d ▼ s ago			1	\$ ·	New Send List Ⅲ • C 🖌	: Email C T
	NAME 🗸	ACCOUNT 🗸	P 🗸 EMAIL	√ MO	BILE 🗸 LIS	T VIEW CONTROLS		~
1	Harvey Dent	FCS - Sans Souci	demo@franchis	secloudsolu 042	17885 Nev	w	18/06/2018 4:10 P	
2	Simon Walker	FCS Bondi Beach	loryn.jenkins@f	ranchiseclo 043	16610 Clo		5/10/2017 5:28 PM	1
3	John Smith	FCS - Bathurst	john.smith@fra	nchiseclou 042	44635 Rer		26/06/2018 1:30 P	

2. Enter the new List Name and press Save.

New List View		
* List Name		
NSW Contacts		
Who sees this list view? Only I can see this list view All users can see this list view () 		
	Cancel	Save

The newly named list view appears together with its filter pane.

3. Choose the Add Filter link to add an extra filter condition.

•-B	All 👻 🔍 Search Contacts and r	more		* ? 🖡 🐻
Operations Manag	Home Chatter Accounts 🗸	Contacts 🗸 Contracts 🗸	Management Logs	∨ More ▼ 🖋
Contacts NSW Contacts V 20 items • Sorted by Name • Filtered by n	my contacts • Updated a few seconds ago		\$ •	New Send List Email Ⅲ
NAME 🕈 🗸 ACC	COUNT 🗸 PHONE 🗸 EMAIL	✓ TI ✓ C ✓	Filters	→
1 Andrew Johns FCS	ک - Canterbury demo@fra	anchi ooffi 💌)	U
2 Ben Smith FCS	- Matraville demo@fra	anchi ooffi 💌		
3 Extra Contact FCS	5 - Montrose 04241631	ooffi	Filter by Owner My contacts	
4 Harvey Dent FCS	S - Sans Souci demo@fra	anchi ooffi 💌		
5 J1 FCS	S Bondi lorynj@gr	nail.c ooffi 💌	Add Filter	Remove All

4. Use the Field, Operator and Value fields to set the new condition, then press Done.

•-B	All 💌	Q Search Contacts and	more		*• 🖶 ? 🖡 🐻
Operations Mana	ig Home	Chatter Accounts 🗸	Contacts 🗸 Contracts	✓ Management Logs	∽ More▼ 🖋
Contacts NSW Contacts 20 items · Sorted by Name · Filt	ered by my contacts •	Updated 2 minutes ago		tật •	New Send List Email
NAME 1	V ACCOUNT 🔨	V PHONE V EMAIL	✓ TI ✓ C ✓	Filters	\rightarrow
1 Andrew Johns	FCS - Canterbury	rv f imo@f	ranchi ooffi		
2 Ben Smith	FCS - Matraville	Field			
3 Extra Contact	FCS - Montrose	Mailing State		Filter by Owner My contacts	
4 Harvey Dent	FCS - Sans Sou	9			
5 J1	FCS Bondi	Operator		Matching all of the	nese filters
6 Jack Andrews	FCS - Coffs Har.	equals		New Filter*	×
7 Jack Franchise	FCS - Balmain	8			
8 James Walker	FCS - Balmain	Value		Add Filter	Remove All
9 Jessica Simpson	n FCS - Greenwic	INSVV			
10 John Smith	FCS - Bathurst	<u>A</u> _	Done	Add Filter Logic	
11 Karen Muller	FCS - Narellan .		Done		

5. Press Save.

•-®		All 💌 🔍 Search Co	ntacts and more		* 🖶 ? 📮 👼
• • • • • • • • •	Operations Manag.	Home Chatter Acco	ounts 🗸 Contacts 🗸	Contracts 🗸	Management Logs 🗸 More 🔻 🏈
20 ite	Contacts NSW Contacts ▼ ms • Sorted by Name • Filtere	d by my contacts • Updated 4 minutes	ago		New Send List Email
	NAME 🕇 🛛 🗸	ACCOUNT V PHONE V	EMAIL V TI V	C 🗸	Cancel Save 🗸
1	Andrew Johns	FCS - Canterbury	demo@franchi	ooffi 💌	
2	Ben Smith	FCS - Matraville	demo@franchi	ooffi 🗨	Filter by Ourpor
3	Extra Contact	FCS - Montrose 04241631		ooffi 💌	My contacts
4	Harvey Dent	FCS - Sans Souci	demo@franchi	ooffi 💌	
5	J1	FCS Bondi	lorynj@gmail.c	ooffi 💌	Matching all of these filters
6	Jack Andrews	FCS - Coffs Har	demo@franchi	ooffi 💌	Mailing State* ×
7	Jack Franchise	FCS - Balmain	jack@fcs.com.au	ooffi 💌	equais NSW
8	James Walker	FCS - Balmain 04111234		ooffi 💌	Add Filter Remove All
9	Jessica Simpson	FCS - Greenwich	mike@franchis	ooffi 🗨	Add Filter Logic

6. Press the arrow to remove the **Filters** pane.

• - ®		All 🔻 🔍 Searc	h Contacts and more		*• 🖬 ? 🖡 🐻
* * * * * * * * *	Operations Manag.	Home Chatter	Accounts 🗸 Contacts 🗸	Contracts 🗸	Management Logs 🗸 More 🗸 🧳
16 ite	Contacts NSW Contacts ▼ ms • Sorted by Name • Filtere	d by my contacts - Mailing State	Updated a few seconds ago		New Send List Email Image:
	NAME 🕇 🗸 🗸	ACCOUNT 🗸 PHONE	V EMAIL V TI V	✓ C ✓	Filters
1	Andrew Johns	FCS - Canterbury	demo@franchi	ooffi 🗨	
2	Ben Smith	FCS - Matraville	demo@franchi	ooffi 💌	
3	Harvey Dent	FCS - Sans Souci	demo@franchi	ooffi 💌	Filter by Owner My contacts
4	J1	FCS Bondi	lorynj@gmail.c	ooffi 💌	
5	Jack Andrews	FCS - Coffs Har	demo@franchi	ooffi 💌	Matching all of these filters
6	Jack Franchise	FCS - Balmain	jack@fcs.com.au	ooffi 💌	Mailing State ×
7	James Walker	FCS - Balmain 0411123	4	ooffi 💌	equals NSW
8	Jessica Simpson	FCS - Greenwich	mike@franchis	ooffi 💌	Add Filter Remove All

7. Now you can see your newly modified list view.

•-®		All 👻 🔍 Search Contacts and m	ore] ? 🌲	6
***	Operations Manag	Home Chatter Accounts 🗸	Contacts 🗸 Contracts 🗸 Managemer	nt Logs	∽ More	•	Ŵ
16 ite	Contacts NSW Contacts ▼ ms • Sorted by Name • Filtered by my	y contacts - Mailing State • Updated 2 minute	5 ago	\$ *	New	Send List En	nail
	NAME 🕇 🗸 🗸	ACCOUNT NAME V PHONE	✓ EMAIL	\sim	TITLE 🗸	con 🗸	
1	Andrew Johns	FCS - Canterbury	demo@franchisecloudsolutions.com			ooffi	
2	Ben Smith	FCS - Matraville	demo@franchisecloudsolutions.com			ooffi	
3	Harvey Dent	FCS - Sans Souci	demo@franchisecloudsolutions.com			ooffi	
4	J1	FCS Bondi	lorynj@gmail.com			ooffi	
5	Jack Andrews	FCS - Coffs Harbour	demo@franchisecloudsolutions.com			ooffi	

How to add columns to a list view

You can add columns to any custom list view.

To add columns to a custom list view

1. From **Recently Viewed**, select a custom list.

• - ®		Q Search A	ccounts and mo	ore			. 🔊
	Operations Manag Home Chatter	Accounts 🥆 C	Contacts 🗸	Contracts 🗸 Manage	ement Logs 🗸 Invoices	✓ Invoice Runs ✓ More	•
E	Accounts Recently Viewed	1					New
15 item	٩	9				\$\$ • III • C'	C T
	RECENT LIST VIEWS	2		NG SUBURB	✓ BILLING STATE	✓ ACCOUNT OWNER AL	····· ~
1	Accounts for Territory			JSE	NSW	swalker	•
2	All Accounts					ofina	•
3						ofina	•
4	Business Accounts					ofina	•
5	Franchise Profile Accounts			ford	NSW	ocomp	•
6	Franchise Sales Accounts					ofina	•
7	Individual Accounts			e.	NSW	stev	•
8	My Accounts				NSW	swalker	•
9	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·			Jbra	NSW	bsmit	•
10	 Recently viewed 			Sydney	NSW	ooper	•
11	ALL OTHER LISTS				NSW	socon	•
12	Employment Candidate Accounts			y	NSW	ooffi	•
13	Master Franchise Profile Accounts					sadmi	•
14	New Last Week					ooper	•

2. Open the List View Control and choose Select Fields to Display.

•			Q Sear	h Accounts and mo	ore			★• 8 ? 4	. 5
***	Operations Manag	g Home Ch	atter Accounts 🗸	Contacts 🗸	Contracts 🗸	Management Logs 🗸	Invoices 🗸 Invoice	Runs 🗸 More 🔻	
5 item	Accounts Accounts for Ter s • Sorted by Account Name	ritory ▼ • • Filtered by Franchise •	Updated a few seconds a	go		1_	¢ •		New
	ACCOUNT N 1 V	ACCOUNT RE 🗸	BILLING SUBU \checkmark	BILLING STATE	✓ BILLING POS	ST 🗸 PHONE	LIST VIEW CONTROLS	ACCOUNT OW N	/
1	Alistair Campbell	Individual	Vaucluse	NSW	2030	0404040404	New	. swalker 🗩	•
2	Bondi Web Design	Business	North Bondi	NSW	2026	(02) 9300 600:	Clone	. swalker	•
3	James Brown	Individual	Bondi Junction	NSW	2026	0431889665	Rename	. swalker	•
4	Martin Newberry	Individual	Bondi Beach		2026	0435778449		swirker	•
5	Ronald Pham	Individual					Edit List Filters	Jwalker	•
							Select Fields to Display	-	
							Select Fields to Display		
							Delete		

3. From Available Fields, select the fields you want to make visible.



4. Now remove any fields you want not to display.



Select Fields to Display

5. Sort the fields into the order you want to see.

Available Fields
FAC Nomination FAC Since Fax Field Manager First Name Gross Profit Actual Gross Profit Target Has Overdue Balance Home Phone Hourly Cost Inactive Reason

6. When you have selected all the fields you want to see, press Save.

Available Fields Visible Fields FAC Nomination Account Name FAC Since Account Record Type Franchise Fax > ~ Field Manager Phone First Name Email Gross Profit Actual Account Owner Alias < \sim Gross Profit Target Has Overdue Balance Home Phone Hourly Cost Inactive Reason Cancel Save

Select Fields to Display

Now you can see the updated list.

• - ®		C	Search Accounts and more.			★• 🖴 ? .	L 👩
***	Operations Manag	Home Chatter Accou	ints 🗸 Contacts 🗸 Co	ntracts 🗸 Management L	ogs 🗸 Invoices 🗸 Inv	roice Runs 🗸 More 🔻	/
5 item	Accounts Accounts for Territory	✔ ▼ red by Franchise • Updated a few s	seconds ago			\$ • Ⅲ • C' ≯ €	New
	ACCOUNT NAME 🕇 🛛 🗸	ACCOUNT RECORD T 🗸	FRANCHISE V	phone 🗸	EMAIL V	Account owner al \checkmark	
1	Alistair Campbell	Individual	FCS Bondi Beach	0404040404	a.campbell@gmail.com.ux	swalker	•
2	Bondi Web Design	Business	FCS Bondi Beach	(02) 9300 6003	info@bondiwebdesign.com	swalker	•
3	James Brown	Individual	FCS Bondi Beach	0431889665	mike+test@franchiseclou	swalker	•
4	Martin Newberry	Individual	FCS Bondi Beach	0435778449		swalker	•
5	Ronald Pham	Individual	FCS Bondi Beach			swalker	•

How to share list views

You can share your list views with your colleagues.

To share a list view

- 1. Select a custom list view that you want to share with others.
- 2. Open the List View Control and choose Sharing Settings.



The Sharing Settings dialog box appears.

3. Select All users can see this list view and press Save.



You have now shared a list view with everyone.

Ľ

The shared list view can now be edited by anyone with the Manage Public List Views permission.

N M

Working with Contracts

Understanding contracts	
Contract Statuses	
How to create a contract	32
Contract fees	
Understanding contract fees	
How to view all fees on a contract	
How to add a contract fee	46
How to adjust a contract fee	53
How to vary a contract	56
How to renew a contract	60
How to cease a contract	63
How to generate contract documents	65
How to issue contract documents	69
How to sign issued contract documents	72
How to activate a contract	73

Understanding contracts

Contracts provide a traceable record of the overall contractual life cycle. Maintaining this history is a key step towards demonstrating compliance with jurisdictional codes of conduct.

Contracts also record current and historical fees. They are stored so that they are machine-readable, and are used for invoice calculation. Machine-readable fee records make invoicing a highly efficient and reliable way of generating invoices that are guaranteed to conform to the contract.

How you use contracts will vary depending on whether you have licensed Franchise Cloud SolutionsFranchise Recruitment product.

- If you have licensed Franchise Recruitment, franchise contracts will be created, generated and possibly signed electronically. These contracts are migrated to Operations Management.
- If you have licensed Operations Management alone, your contracting process will largely happen outside of Operations Management. You will then need to enter information into Operations Management to reflect contract history and current status. When entering data, begin by creating a new contract. Once the franchisee has signed the contract, you will then want to create a Customer Franchise Profile to reflect the entity that fulfills the contract. See "How to create a contract" on page 32.

Contract Statuses

Contract statuses provide a convenient way to keep track of the status of each contract. By managing contracts through each status, Operations Management helps you focus on efficiently growing your business.

You can see the status of each contract by looking at the contract status indicator.



Here is a summary of each contract status.

Contract Status	Description
Draft	The initial state of a newly-created contract.

Contract Status	Description
Documents Issued	The contract has been issued to the prospective franchisee for con- sideration. Key fields are now tracked. Changing any key field will set the status back to Draft.
Signed	When the Customer Signed Date and the Customer Signed By fields are completed, the system automatically advances to the Signed Stage. This indicates that the customer has signed the documents.
Activated	The contract is activated. Fees are being calculated and jobs can be allocated once the franchise begins to trade.
Deactivation in progress	The contract has a planned cessation date in the future and is still currently active.
Deactivated	The contract has ceased.

Draft

When a contract is first created it is placed in the Draft status. The Draft status is where all the relevant details of the contract are entered and edited. The Draft status is complete when it matches the contract you have (or will) provide to the franchisee for consideration.

Documents issued

Documents issued status represents the period when the contract is issued to the franchisee for review and signing. Documents will be generated and sent to the franchisee for consideration during this status. To place the contract in Documents Issued status

» Press Mark Status as Complete

• ~ @	Q S	earch Salesforce			*	🗄 ? 🌲 🐻
Operations Manag Home	Chatter Accounts	✓ Contacts ✓ Con	ntracts 🗸 Manageme	ent Logs 🗸 🛛 Invoices 🥆	🗸 Payments 🗸 I	More 🔻 💉
Contract 00000229			+ Follow	Create Franchise Profile	Activate Edit	Clone Delete
Account Name Status Cont FCS Wahroonga Draft 1/06	ract Start Date C 5/2018 3	Contract End Date C 1/05/2019 1	Contract Term (months) 12			
Draft	Documents Issued	Signer	d	Activated	✓ Mark Sta	tus as Complete
DETAILS RELATED				ACTIVITY	CHATTER	
Contract Owner	2 Cont	ract Number 00229			New Event New	Task More
Status Draft	Cont	ract Version Number		Log a Call	New Lvent New	TASK MOLE
Account Name FCS Wahroonga	Unex 12	pired Contract Months		Create ne	w	Add
Type Of Agreement Initial	Territ	tory itory - Wahroonga		Activity Time	line 🔻	C ^I Expand All
Contract Start Date 1/06/2018	Mast FCS	er Franchise Profile NSW		Next Steps		
Contract Term (months) 12	Com 17/	mencement Date 06/2018		No next steps.	To get things moving, a	dd a task or set up a
Contract End Date 31/05/2019	Num 5 (F	iber Of Further Terms ive)		Past Activity	meeting.	
	Furth 12	ner Term Duration (months)		No past activi	ty. Past meetings and ta	sks marked as done

The contract is placed in **Documents Issued** status. The current date is recorded as the Documents Issued Date.

Now that a contract is issued, any changes to key fields will set the contract status back to Draft. The expectation is that you will re-issue the contract to the franchisee for consideration.

Signed

Contract signed records the date at which the contract is signed by the franchisee. Ensure that this date matches the signature details on the executed contract.

In compliance with the Australian Competition & Consumer Commission Franchising Code of Conduct, there must be fourteen days between the Documents Issued Date and the Customer Signed Date.
To mark a contract as signed

1. From the **Contract**, scroll down to the **Contract Execution** section and press **Edit**.

• ••	Q Search Salesforce					★ • (8? 🖡 🤅
Operations Manag Home Chatt	er Accounts 🗸 Contacts 🗸 Contrac	ts 🗸 Manage	ement Logs	s 🗸 Invoices	∽ Paymer	nts 🗸 Mo	ore 🔻
00000229		+ Follow	Create I	Franchise Profile	Activate	Edit C	one Delete
31/05/2019	5 (Five)		1	Past Activi	ty		
	Further Term Duration (months)						
	12			No past act	ivity. Past meet show	ings and tasks / up here.	s marked as done
\checkmark Initial Purchase Information							st Activities 🛛 🔻
Initial Fee	Personal Release Signed						
Deposit Amount	Deposit Date			X= Activ	vity Lists		Add List
Balance Amount \$0.00	Balance Due Date			NAME N	UMBER OF TA	sks сом	PLETED TASKS
✓ Compliance Information							
Legal Entity Name 🕕	Business Number						
Trading Name	Company Number						
Operating Structure							
✓ Contract Execution							
	Customer Signed Date		,				
	Customer Signed By						

2. Enter the Customer Signed Date and Customer Signed By fields.

•**®	Q Search Salesforce	** 🗄 ? 🖡 🐻
Operations Manag Home Chatter	Accounts V Contacts V Contracts V Managem	nent Logs \checkmark Invoices \checkmark Payments \checkmark More \checkmark
₿ 00000229	+ Follow	Create Franchise Profile Activate Edit Clone Delete
compliance information		
Legal Entity Name	Business Number	
Trading Name	Company Number	
Operating Structure		
✓ Contract Execution		
	Customer Signed Date 31/05/2018 Customer Signed By Table Hal Gregory ×	5 i 5
✓ Address Information		
Billing Address Billing Street Cance	1 Save	

3. The Stage automatically advances to Signed.

Operations Manag Home Chatter	Q Search Salesforce Accounts ✓ Contacts ✓ Contracts ✓ Management Logs	x v Invoices ∨ Payments ∨ More v ✓
Contract 00000229	+ Follow	Create Variation Create Renewal Cease Contract
Account Name Status Contract Start Dat FCS Wahroonga Signed 1/06/2018	e Contract End Date Contract Term (months) 31/05/2019 12	
$\langle \cdot \rangle \rangle \langle \cdot \rangle$	Signed Activated Deactivation in Pr	Deactivated V Mark Status as Complete
DETAILS RELATED		ACTIVITY CHATTER
Contract Owner OPS Finance Manager	Contract Number 00000229 Contract Version Number	Log a Call New Event New Task More
Signed //	Territory	Create new Add
Type Of Agreement Initial	Master Franchise Profile FCS NSW	Activity Timeline
Contract Start Date 1/06/2018	Purchase History ① PH-000034	Next Steps More Steps
Contract Term (months) 12	Previous Contract	No next steps. To get things moving, add a task or set up a
Contract End Date 31/05/2019	Number Of Further Terms 5 (Five)	meeting. Past Activity
Unexpired Contract Months 12	Further Term Duration (months) 12	No past activity. Past meetings and tasks marked as done
Once the contrac Account (How to The Franchise Pr ation date otherw	t is signed, it is time to create t create a franchise profile acco ofile Account must be created ise the system will produce an	the Franchise Profile ount). before the planned Activ- nerror during Activation.
Now that a contra ation of a variatio to the contract ov	nct is signed, any changes to k n. Creating variations helps yo er time.	ey fields requires the cre- ou keep a history of changes

Activated

Signed contracts will automatically activate when the commencement date is reached.

To manually activate a contract

» Press Mark Status as Complete

		Q Search Contracts and	more		★	÷ (C
• Operations Manag	Home Chatter	Accounts 🗸 Contacts 🗸	Contracts 🗸	Management Logs	✓ Invoices ✓ Payments ✓ More ▼	
Contract 00000229				+ Follow	Create Variation Create Renewal Cease C	Contract
account Name Status	Contract Start Date	Contract End Date	Contract Term	(months)		
CS Wanroonga Signed	1/06/2018	31/05/2019	12			
		Signed Activat	ed Deact	ivation in Pr	Deactivated 🗸 🗸 Mark Status as Con	mplete
DETAILS RELATED					ACTIVITY CHATTER	
ontract Owner		Contract Number 00000229			Log a Call New Event New Task N	Vore
tatus igned		Contract Version Number				
ccount Name CS Wahroonga		Territory Territory - Wahroonga			Create new	Add
ype Of Agreement nitial		Master Franchise Profile			Activity Timeline	pand All
ontract Start Date /06/2018		Purchase History PH-000034			Next Steps Mon	
ontract Term (months) 2		Previous Contract			No next steps. To get things moving, add a task o	or set up a
ontract End Date 1/05/2019		Number Of Further Terms 5 (Five)			meeting. Past Activity	
nexpired Contract Months 2		Further Term Duration (mo 12	nths)		No past activity. Dast mostings and tasks marked	
Operations Manag	Home Chatter	Q Search Contracts and Accounts ✓ Contacts ✓	nore Contracts 🗸	Management Logs	× Invoices ∨ Payments ∨ More ▼	÷ (
Operations Manag	Home Chatter .	Q Search Contracts and I	nore Contracts 🗸	Management Logs + Follow	Invoices Payments More Create Variation Create Renewal Create Cre	• (
Contract 00000229 count Name SWahroonga	Home Chatter . Contract Start D 1/06/2018	Contracts and i Accounts Contacts Contract End Date 31/05/2019	Contracts V Contract Ter 12	Management Logs + Follow m (months)	 Invoices Variation Create Renewal Cease C 	Contract
Operations Manag Contract 00000229 count Name SWahroonga Status Activated	Home Chatter Contract Start D 1/06/2018	Search Contracts and I Accounts Contacts Contract End Date 31/05/2019 Activat	Contracts V Contract Ter 12 ed Deact	Management Logs + Follow m (months)		Contract
Operations Manag Contract 00000229 count Name Status Activated	Home Chatter	Q Search Contracts and I Accounts ✓ Contacts ✓ ate Contract End Date 31/05/2019 ✓ Activat	Contracts v Contract Ter 12 ed Deact	Management Logs + Follow m (months)		Contract
Contract Contract Contract St Wahroonga Contract Contract Owner Contract Owner Contract Owner Contract Owner	Home Chatter	Search Contracts and I Accounts Contract End Date 31/05/2019 Activat Contract Number 00000229	Contracts v Contract Ter 12 ed Deact	Management Logs + Follow rm (months) ivation in Pr		Contract
Operations Manag Contract O00000229 Count Name Status Activated Count Name RELATED Countract Owner OPS Finance Manager atus Countract Owner	Home Chatter	Search Contracts and I Accounts Contract End Date 31/05/2019 Activat Contract Number 00000229 Contract Version Number	Contracts v Contract Ter 12 ed Deact	Management Logs + Follow m (months) ivation in Pr	Invoices V Payments V More V Create Variation Create Renewal Cease C Deactivated Varia Status as Con ACTIVITY CHATTER Log a Call New Event New Task N	Contract
Contract Contract Contract Count Name Status Activated Count Name Count Nam	Home Chatter	Search Contracts and i Accounts Contract End Date 31/05/2019 Activat Contract Number 00000229 Contract Version Number Territory Territory	Contracts v Contract Ter 12 ed Deact	Management Logs + Follow m (months) ivation in Pr	Invoices Payments More Create Variation Create Renewal Cease C Deactivated Mark Status as Con ACTIVITY CHATTER Log a Call New Event New Task M Create new	Contract Contract More Add
Operations Manag Contract 000000229 Count Name SWahroonga EtaiLS RELATED Count Name C	Home Chatter	Search Contracts and I Accounts Contract End Date 31/05/2019 Activat Contract Number O0000229 Contract Version Number Territory Territory Wahroonga Master Franchise Profile FCS NSW	Contracts v Contract Ter 12 ed Deact	Management Logs + Follow rm (months) ivation in Pr	Invoices V Payments V More V Create Variation Create Renewal Cease C Deactivated Variation Create Renewal Cease C ACTIVITY CHATTER Log a Call New Event New Task N Create new Activity Timeline V C' Exc	Order O
Contract Contract Contract Status Activated Count Name Status Activated Count Name Count Name	Home Chatter	Contract End Date Contract End Date Contract End Date 31/05/2019 Contract Number Contract Number Contract Version Number Territory Territory Territory - Wahroonga Master Franchise Profile FCS NSW Purchase History PH-000034	Contracts v Contract Ter 12 ed Deact	Management Logs + Follow m (months)	Invoices Payments More Create Variation Create Renewal Cease Of Deactivated Mark Status as Con ACTIVITY CHATTER Log a Call New Event New Task M Create new Activity Timeline Ce Example Cease Of Cease New Steps More	Ocontract Contract More Add pand All re Steps
Contract Contract Contract Contract Contract Count Name Status Activated Count Name Count Na	Home Chatter	Search Contracts and I Accounts Contract Contract End Date 31/05/2019 Activat Contract Number O0000229 Contract Version Number Territory Territory Vahroonga Master Franchise Profile FCS NSW Purchase History PH-000034 Previous Contract	Contracts v Contract Ter 12 ed Deact	Management Logs + Follow m (months) ivation in Pr	Invoices V Payments V More V Create Variation Create Renewal Cease C Deactivated Variation Create Renewal Cease C Deactivated Variation Create Renewal Cease C ACTIVITY CHATTER Log a Call New Event New Task N Create new Activity Timeline C Exer Next Steps More No next steps. To get things moving, add a task of the set of the	Or Contract Contract Contract More Add pand All re Steps or set up a
Contract Operations Manag Contract O00000229 Count Name Status Activated Count Name	Home Chatter	Contract End Date 31/05/2019 Contract End Date 31/05/2019 Contract Number Contract Number Contract Version Number Territory Territory - Wahroonga Master Franchise Profile FCS NSW Purchase History PH-000034 Previous Contract Number Of Further Terms 5 (Five)	Contracts v Contract Ter 12 ed Deact	Management Logs + Follow m (months) ivation in Pr	Invoices Payments More Create Variation Create Renewal Cease Of Deactivated Mark Status as Con ACTIVITY CHATTER Log a Call New Event New Task M Create new Activity Timeline Create new	Contract Contract More Add pand All re Steps or set up a

How to create a contract

When you are bringing new franchisees on-board, you begin to reflect this activity in Operations Management by creating a new contract.

To create a contract

1. From the Salesforce menu, select Contracts.

€ -10	Q Search Salesforce	👳 🖬 ? 🌲 🐻
Operations Manag Home Chatter	Accounts 🗸 Contacts Contracts 🗸 Management Log	is 🗸 Invoices 🗸 Expenses 🗸 More 🔻 🖋
Today's Events	Today's Tasks	Assistant
Looks like you're free and clear the rest of the day.	Nothing due today–go grab a coffee while you've got some free time.	Nothing needs your attention right now. Check back later.
	View All	
Recent Records (00000229) (00000219)	Key Deals To see your opportunity-related data, contact your Salesforce admin.	

The **Recently Viewed** list view displays. This list may be empty.

2. Press the New button.

•-®				Q S	Searc	h Contracts a	and mo	ore						*	8	?	Ļ (6
***	Operations Manag	g Home	Chatter	Accounts	~	Contacts	~	Contracts 🗸	Manage	ment Logs	✓ Invo	ices 🗸	Expenses	~	More	•		S. Mart
5 item	Contracts Recently Viewed	•										-	\$ •		Ċ		New	r T
	CONTRACT NU 🗸	ACCOUNT NA	V STAT	rus	\sim	CONTRACT	ST	✓ CONTRACT	en 🗸	TYPE OF AG	GRE 🗸	TERRITO	DRY 🗸	CON	FRACT	0	~	
1	00000229	FCS Wahroonga	Activ	/ated		1/06/2018		31/05/2019	9	Initial		Territory	- Wahroo	ofina				•
2	00000219	Sean O'connell	Dead	ctivation in Pi	r	1/05/2018		30/04/2020)	Renewal		Territory	(D) - Bondi	ocom	р			T
3	00000218	Shane Ross	Doc	uments Issue	d	27/04/2018	8	26/04/2023	3	Initial		Territory	(D) - Bon	ocom	р			•
4	00000112	Sean O'connell	Dead	ctivated		13/08/201	7	12/02/2018	3	Initial		Territory	(D) - Bondi	ocom	р			•
5	00000131	Jannis Bott	Sign	ed		18/10/201	7	17/04/2018	3	Initial		Territory	- Kogarah	ocom	р			•

The New Contract dialog box appears.

3. Select the Franchise Agreement option and press Next.



4. Enter a **Contract Name** and select the proposed **Territory**.

New Contract: Franchise Agreement

Contract Information			
Contract Owner OPS Compliance Manager		Contract Number	
Contract Name		Contract Version Number 🚯	
Mandy Martin - FCS Manly			
* Status		Territory	
Draft	•	🔯 Territory - Manly	×
* Account Name		Master Franchise Profile (1)	
Search Accounts	Q	Search Accounts	0
* Type Of Agreement 🕕		*Number Of Further Terms 🚯	
None	•	None	
* Contract Start Date		Further Term Duration (months)	
	ä		
Commencement Date 🚯			
			
* Contract Term (months)			

5. To represent a brand new Contract, leave the Status at Draft.

6. You will need to associate the contract with an **Account**. For a new franchisee, you will need to create an account for the person or entity who will be purchasing the franchise.

New Contract: Franchise Agreement

Contract Owner DPS Compliance Manager	Contract Number	
Contract Name	Contract Version Number 🕕	
Mandy Martin - FCS Manly		
Status	Territory (1)	
Draft	Territory - Manly	×
Account Name	Master Franchise Profile 🕕	
Search Accounts	Q Search Accounts	Q
ECS Pingwood	* Number Of Further Terms 🕚	
	None	
VIC Master	Further Term Duration (months))
Dianna Ross		
SA Master	9	
	<u>~ (4</u>	

The New Account dialog appears.

7. For a franchisee sale, generally choose an Individual account, then press Next.

New Account									
Select a record type		Business							
1		Franchise Profile Represents a Franchise							
	۲	Individual							
		Master Franchise Profile Represents a Master Franchise							
		Cancer							

8. Enter the individual's name and contact details, then press **Save**.

Ν	lew Accour	nt: Individual			
Account Information	៍				
* Account Name Salutation Ms.	•	Account Owner OPS Compliance Ma	nager		
First Name Mandy					
* Last Name Martin					
Title		Franchise			0
Mobile		Email			~
Home Phone		Phone			
Birthdate		Fax			
Next Review Due Date	a		2		
			Cancel	Save & New	Sa

The New Contract dialog box is re-displayed.

9. Now enter the remainder of the mandatory fields and any other information you may have to hand.

New Contract: Franchise Agreement

Contract Information		
Contract Owner		Contract Number
OPS Compliance Manager		Contract Varian Number
Contract Name		Contract version Number
Mandy Martin - FCS Manly		
* Status		Territory
Draft	•	Territory - Manly ×
* Account Name		Master Franchise Profile
🖩 Mandy Martin	×	FCS NSW ×
* Type Of Agreement		Commencement Date 🕕
Initial	•	1/06/2018
* Contract Start Date		* Number Of Further Terms
31/05/2018	ä	2 (Two)
* Contract Term (months)		Further Term Duration (months)
12		24

- 10. If you have the information to hand, you can enter as much or as little of the subsequent sections.
 - » Initial Purchase Information
 - » Compliance Information
 - » Contract Execution
 - » Address Information

11. When complete, press Save.

The new **Contract** is displayed.

• • •		Q Search Contracts and	more					? 🌲 👼
Operations Manag	Home Chatter Ac	counts 🗸 Contacts 🗸	Contracts 🗸	Vanagement Logs	V Invoices	 Expenses 	∽ More	- /
Contract 00000230			+ Fo	Ilow Create F	ranchise Profile	Activate E	dit Clone	Delete
Account Name Status Mandy Martin Draft	Contract Start Date 31/05/2018	Contract End Date 30/05/2019	Contract Term (mo 12	nths)				
Draft	Documents Issu	ued	Signed		Activated	~ N	lark Status as	Complete
DETAILS RELATED					ACTIVITY	CHATT	ER	
Contract Owner		Contract Number 00000230			Log a Call	New Event	New Task	More
Contract Name Mandy Martin - FCS Manly		Contract Version Number						
Status Draft		Unexpired Contract Month 12	15		Create ne	9W		Add
Account Name Mandy Martin		Territory Territory - Manly			Activity Time	eline	T C	Expand All
Type Of Agreement Initial		Master Franchise Profile			Next Steps			
Contract Start Date 31/05/2018		Commencement Date [] 1/06/2018)		No next steps	. To get things m	oving, add a ta	ask or set up a
Contract Term (months) 12		Number Of Further Terms 2 (Two)			Past Activity	meet	ing.	
Contract End Date 30/05/2019		Further Term Duration (mo	onths)		No past activ	ity. Past meeting	s and tasks ma	irked as done

Contract fees

Understanding contract fees

In Operations Management, contracts contain fee records. Fee records are used to document financial aspects of the contractual agreement with a franchisee. They are also used to calculate fees for inclusion on periodic invoices. Generating invoices using contract fees saves labor, increases accuracy and allows Operations Management to maintain records of all invoiced fees for compliance purposes.

Each fee record specifies two types of information

» Fee period- the start date, end date and cycle at which the fee is charged

» Fee calculation – how a fee is calculated each time it is inv	/oiced
---	--------

Fee Fee-000024		Edit	Delete	Clone Fee	
DETAILS					-
Fee Number Fee-000024	((Contract 00000108			
Summary System Royalty	C N	Cycle 🕕 Monthly			
Type 🚯 Management Fee	F	Reason For Change	0		
Start Date		ast Invoiced			- Hee berroo
End Date 🚯					
Description (1) Royalty for franchisor brandmark,	systems ar	nd knowledge of	productio	n. 🎤	
✓ Fee Calculation					
Calculation Type 🕕 Royalty					
Amount Inc Tax 🕚	F	Royalty Source 🕕			- Fee calculation
Quantity 🚺	F 3	Royalty Rate 🕕			

Fee periods

Fee periods define how often a fee is collected within the given duration. The duration is defined by the start and end dates, and the frequency is defined by the selected cycle.

Start and End Dates

The period over which fees are charged begin at the date specified by Start Date. Setting an End Date is optional. When there is no End Date, the fee will be charged in every successive cycle until the contract is deactivated. When you do set End Date, this fee will not be charged after the specified date.

E Fee-000024			Edit	Delete	Clone Fee
DETAILS					
Fee Number Fee-000024		Contract	() 08		
Summary System Royalty		Cycle Monthly) /		
Type 🔹 🚯 Type		Reason F	or Change	0	
Start Date		Last Invo 28/08/	iced		
End Date 🕕					
Description 🕕 🔞 Royalty for franchisor brandmark	, systems	and know	vledge o	f productic	in. 🧪
✓ Fee Calculation					
Calculation Type					
Amount Inc Tax 🔹		Royalty S Invoice	ource 📵		
Quantity 1		Royalty R 3.00%	ate 🚯		

When you perform annual fee adjustments for CPI increases, it is useful to set the expiring fee's End Date and to create a new fee record to represent the adjusted fee value. That way you maintain a record of the value of all fees that have been charged under that contract.

Cycles

Each fee has a specified cycle.

Fee-000024		E	Edit	Delete	Clone Fee
DETAILS					
Fee Number Fee-000024		Contract 00000108)		
Summary 🕕 System Royalty		Cycle Monthly			
Type 🚯 Management Fee		Reason For C	hange	0	1
Start Date 1/08/2018		Last Invoiced 28/08/201	1 () 18		
End Date 🚯					
Description ① Royalty for franchisor brandma	ark, systems	and knowled	dge of	productio	n. 🦯
✓ Fee Calculation					
Calculation Type () Royalty					
		Royalty Source	ce 🕕		
Amount Inc Tax 🕚		Invoice			

Available cycles are

- » Daily
- » Weekly
- » Fortnightly (every second week)
- » Monthly
- » Quarterly
- » Annually

Using different cycles for different fees allows you the flexibility of charging fees at different frequencies.

For example, a contract may use a fixed annual fee, a monthly fee based on invoices, and a weekly fee based on POS receipts.

Fee types

Some franchisors issue multiple monthly invoices.



For example, they may issue management fees on the first of the month and POS-based royalties on the fifteenth day of the month.

To enable multiple invoices to be issued using the same cycle, Operations Management allows you distinguish fees of one type from another.

Eee Fee-000024			Edit	Delete	Clone Fee
DETAILS					
Fee Number Fee-000024		Contract	1 .08		
Summary 🕕 System Royalty		Cycle Monthly	y		
Type 🔹 Management Fee		Reason F	or Change	9	
Start Date 1/08/2018		Last Invo 28/08/	iced 🕕 2018		
End Date 🕕					
Description Royalty for franchisor brandmark,	systems	and know	wledge o	f productio	n. 🦯
✓ Fee Calculation					
Calculation Type Toyalty					
Amount Inc Tax		Royalty S Invoice	ource 🚺)	
Quantity 🕕		Royalty R 3.00%	ate 🚺		

When you are constructing an Invoice Run, you can choose to select specific types of fees into the run. Typical examples of fee types are management fees, software sub-scriptions, advertising and communications levies.

The fee type will often also appear on the generated invoice beside the fee name in order to help franchisees understand what the fee is for.

Fee calculations

Fee calculations describe the way in which fees are calculated every invoice cycle. There are two types of fee calculations

- » Fixed fees fees that levy specific dollar amounts
- » Royalties fees that are levied in proportion to invoice or POS values

Fixed fees

Fixed fees represent concrete dollar amounts. When you complete a fixed fee, you need to specify that the Calculation Type is *Fixed*, the value of the Amount Inc Tax, and the Quantity.

Fee Fee-000023		Edit	Delete	Clone Fee
DETAILS				
Fee Number Fee-000023	Contrac	t 🚯 108		
Summary	Cycle (Month	B ly		
Type 🔹 🚯 Type	Reason	For Chang	e 🚺	
Start Date 1/08/2018	Last Inv 28/08	oiced		
End Date 🚯				
Description 🕕				
✓ Fee Calculation				
Calculation Type 🕕 🗊				
Amount Inc Tax AUD 1,002.00	 Royalty	Source	3	
Quantity 🚺 1	 Royalty	Rate 🚯		

Quantity allows you to treat the Amount Inc Tax as if it represents a package.

For example, you might offer your franchisees "advertising packages," where the franchisee may select additional packages. Where a franchisee selects two package units, you can enter the Quantity as 2 in order to double the amount charged for this particular fee.

The per unit Amount Inc Tax, Quantity and calculated sub-total usually all display on the franchisee invoice, depending on the configuration of your invoice template.

Royalty fees

Royalty fees represent fees that vary in proportion to a measure of business activity. Available measures include

- » Invoice the value of invoices issued in the given period
- » POS the value of POS transactions in the given period

POS data is imported into Operations Management from a POS data provider.

When you complete a royalty fee, you need to specify that the Calculation Type is *Royalty*, the Royalty Source is either *Invoice* or *POS*, and the Rate is set to a percentage value.

Eee Fee-000024			Edit	Delete	Clone Fee
DETAILS					
Fee Number Fee-000024		Contrac	t 🚯 108		
Summary 🕕 System Royalty		Cycle (Month	1) Iy		
Type 🚯 Management Fee		Reason	For Chang	ge 🚯	
Start Date		Last Inv 28/08	oiced		
End Date 🔹					
Description Royalty for franchisor brandma	ırk, system	is and kn	owledge	of product	ion.
✓ Fee Calculation					
Calculation Type 🕕 🔞	J.				
Amount Inc Tax 🚯		Royalty	Source	3	

Quantity 🕕

Royalty Rate 3.00%

How to view all fees on a contract

Here is the best way to see all the fees on a contract.

To view all fees on a contract

1. From the **Contract**, select the **Related** tab.

• . ®	Q 00000225	*• 🖬 ? 单 🐻
•••• Operations Manag Home Chatter	Accounts V Contacts V Contracts V Management Logs	✓ Invoices ✓ Invoice Runs ✓ More ▼
Contract 00000225	+ Follow	Create Variation Create Renewal Cease Contract
Account Name Status Contract Start FCS Maroubra Activated 1/05/2018	Date Contract End Date Contract Term (months) 30/04/2020 24	
\sim \rightarrow \sim $>$	Activated Deactivation in Pr	Deactivated V Mark Status as Complete
DETAILS RELATED		ACTIVITY CHATTER
Contract Owner OPS Finance Manager	Contract Number 00000225	Log a Call New Event New Task More
Status Activated	Contract Version Number	
Account Name FCS Maroubra	Territory Territory (D) - Maroubra	Create new Add
Type Of Agreement Initial	Master Franchise Profile FCS NSW	Activity Timeline
Contract Start Date 1/05/2018	Purchase History PH-000031	Next Steps ····· More Steps
Contract Term (months) 24	Previous Contract	No next steps. To get things moving, add a task or set up a
Contract End Date 30/04/2020	Number Of Further Terms 3 (Three)	meeting. Past Activity
Unexpired Contract Months 24	Further Term Duration (months) 24	No past activity. Past meetings and tasks marked as done

2. From the **Fees** section, press **View All**.

• • •		Q Search Sale	sforce				*	8? 🗭 🦫	5
Operations N	Manag Home Chat	ter Accounts 🗸 Cor	ntacts 🗸 Cor	ntracts 🗸 Ma	anagement Logs	✓ Invoices ✓	Invoice Runs 🗸	More 🔻	
Contract 00000225					+ Follow	Create Variation	Create Renewal	Cease Contract	
Account Name FCS Maroubra	Status Contract St Activated 1/05/201	cart Date Contract E 8 30/04/20	ind Date 020	Contract Term (m 24	nonths)				
~	\rangle \checkmark \rangle	~ >	Activated	Deactivat	tion in Pr	Deactivated	✓ Mark Sta	tus as Complete	
DETAILS	RELATED					ACTIVITY	CHATTER		
🖺 Fees (6+)					New	Log a Call	New Event New	Fask More	
FEE NUMBER	TYPE	CALCULATION TYPE	AMOUNT INC T	ΆX					
Fee-000167	Subscription	Fixed	\$1.00	•		Create new		Add	
Fee-000166	Subscription	Fixed	\$10.00						
Fee-000164	Management Fee	Royalty		•		Activity Timeli	ne 🔻	C ^I Expand All	
Fee-000163	Management Fee	Fixed	\$1,000.00	•		Next Steps			
Fee-000162	Communications Levy	Fixed	\$45.00			No next steps. T	o get things moving, a	dd a task or set up a	
Fee-000161	Advertising Levy	Fixed	\$199.00			Past Activity	meeting.		
		View All				No past activity	. Past meetings and ta	sks marked as done	

The **Fees** list appears with a summary of fee details.

• - ®				Q Searc	h Salesforce					3? 🖡 👼
***	Operations Manag	Hom	e Chatter	Accounts 🗸	Contacts 🗸	Contracts 🗸	Management Logs	✓ Invoices ✓	Invoice Runs 🗸	More 🔻 💉
Contra Fees 7 item:	acts > 00000225 ; s • Sorted by Fee Number •	Updated a few s	econds ago							New ¢ • C ⁴
	FEE NUMBER 🕹	✓ TYPE	~	CALCULATION	TY 🗸 AMOU	JNT INC TAX 🗸 🗸	ROYALTY RATE	✓ START DATE	✓ END DATE	~
1	Fee-000167	Subscripti	on	Fixed	\$1.00			1/01/2018		•
2	Fee-000166	Subscripti	on	Fixed	\$10.0	0		1/01/2018		•
3	Fee-000164	Managem	ent Fee	Royalty			3.00%	1/05/2018		•
4	Fee-000163	Managem	ent Fee	Fixed	\$1,00	0.00		1/05/2018	31/05/2018	3 💌
5	Fee-000162	Communi	cations Levy	Fixed	\$45.0	0		1/05/2018		•
6	Fee-000161	Advertisin	g Levy	Fixed	\$199.	00		1/05/2018		•
7	Fee-000160	Software S	ubscription	Fixed	\$90.0	0		1/05/2018		

How to add a contract fee

Contract fees are typically added:

- » during contract negotiation
- » at the conclusion of contract negotiation
- » during the operation of the contract as allowed for within the contract terms

While the system does not monitor changes in the contract fee schedule, any changes after signing not already provided for by the terms of the contract requires signing a variation to the contract. The system does not monitor or flag the need for variations based on fee changes. Contract variations can be issued.

To add a new fee

- 1. View all fees on a contract. See "How to view all fees on a contract" on page 44.
- 2. From the **Fees** list, press **New**.

•			Q Sear	ch Salesforce					🗄 ? 🌲 🐻
	Operations Manag	. Home Chatt	er Accounts 🗸	Contacts 🗸	Contracts 🗸	Management Logs	✓ Invoices ✓	Invoice Runs 🗸	More 🔻 💉
Contr Fee 7 iten	racts > 00000225 S ns • Sorted by Fee Number • U _l	odated 12 minutes ago							New p C
	Fee number \downarrow \checkmark	TYPE	✓ CALCULATION	I TY 🗸 AMOU	NT INC TAX 🗸 🗸	ROYALTY RATE	✓ START DATE	V END DATE	~
1	Fee-000167	Subscription	Fixed	\$1.00			1/01/2018		•
2	Fee-000166	Subscription	Fixed	\$10.00)		1/01/2018		
3	Fee-000164	Management Fee	Royalty			3.00%	1/05/2018		
4	Fee-000163	Management Fee	Fixed	\$1,000	0.00		1/05/2018		•
5	Fee-000162	Communications Lev	Fixed	\$45.00)		1/05/2018		•
6	Fee-000161	Advertising Levy	Fixed	\$199.0	00		1/05/2018		•
7	Fee-000160	Software Subscription	Fixed	\$90.00)		1/05/2018		•

3. In the **New Fee** dialog box, configure the fee information.

ee Number		*Contract
		🖹 00000225 ×
Summary		Cycle
Software Subscription		Monthly
Туре		Reason For Change
Software Subscription	•	Launch of new Business Management software.
Start Date		Last Invoiced
1/01/2018	曲	
nd Date		
	苗	
escription		
escription World's best CRM software for franchise bus	sinesses.	
escription World's best CRM software for franchise bus	sinesses.	
Bescription World's best CRM software for franchise bus ee Calculation	sinesses.	*
vescription World's best CRM software for franchise bus ee Calculation Calculation Type	sinesses.	*
escription World's best CRM software for franchise bus ee Calculation Calculation Type None	sinesses.	÷
escription World's best CRM software for franchise bus ee Calculation Calculation TypeNone mount Inc Tax	sinesses.	Royalty Source
escription World's best CRM software for franchise bus ee Calculation Calculation TypeNone mount Inc Tax	v	Royalty Source
escription World's best CRM software for franchise bus Calculation Calculation TypeNone mount Inc Tax uantity	sinesses.	Royalty SourceNone Royalty Rate
Vescription World's best CRM software for franchise bus ee Calculation Calculation TypeNone mount Inc Tax Quantity	v v	Royalty Source None • Royalty Rate •
escription World's best CRM software for franchise bus ee Calculation Calculation TypeNone mount Inc Tax Quantity ystem Information	sinesses.	Royalty Source None Royalty Rate
escription World's best CRM software for franchise bus ee Calculation Calculation TypeNone mount Inc Tax Quantity system Information Gurrency	sinesses.	Royalty Source -None Royalty Rate
Vescription World's best CRM software for franchise bus ee Calculation Calculation TypeNone mount Inc Tax Quantity ystem Information urrency Australian Dollar	sinesses.	Royalty Source None Royalty Rate
Vescription World's best CRM software for franchise bus Calculation Calculation TypeNone mount Inc Tax uantity ystem Information urrency Australian Dollar	v v	Royalty Source None • Royalty Rate •
Vescription World's best CRM software for franchise bus ee Calculation Calculation TypeNone mount Inc Tax Quantity ystem Information urrency Australian Dollar	sinesses.	Royalty Source None Royalty Rate

- 4. Complete the Fee Calculation.
 - » For a fixed fee, How to configure a fixed fee.
 - » For a royalty, How to configure a royalty.
- 5. When complete, press **Save**.

How to configure a fixed fee

Fixed fees enable you to charge a specified amount per contract cycle.

To configure a fixed fee

1. From the Calculation Type field, select Fixed.

New Fee

ee Number	Construct	
ee Number	Contract	×
* Summary	* Cycle	
Software Subscription	Monthly	•
* Туре	Reason For Change	
Software Subscription	Launch of new Business Man	agement software.
* Start Date	Last Invoiced	1
1/01/2018		i
End Date		
	*	
		
Description World's best CRM software for franchi	e businesses.	
Description World's best CRM software for franchi Fee Calculation	e businesses.	
Description World's best CRM software for franchi Fee Calculation * Calculation Type	e businesses.	ļ,
Description World's best CRM software for franchi Fee Calculation Calculation Type Fixed	ee businesses.	
Description World's best CRM software for franchi Fee Calculation Calculation Type Fixed Amount Inc Tax	ee businesses.	
Description World's best CRM software for franchi Tee Calculation Calculation Type Fixed Amount Inc Tax	ee businesses.	
Description World's best CRM software for franchi Fee Calculation *Calculation Type Fixed Amount Inc Tax Quantity	Royalty Source	
Description World's best CRM software for franchi Fee Calculation * Calculation Type Fixed Amount Inc Tax Quantity	Royalty Source Royalty Rate	A
Description World's best CRM software for franchi Fee Calculation * Calculation Type Fixed Amount Inc Tax Quantity System Information	Royalty Source Royalty Rource Royalty Rate	*
Description World's best CRM software for franchi Fee Calculation Calculation Type Fixed Amount Inc Tax Quantity System Information Currency	Royalty Source Royalty Rate	
Description World's best CRM software for franchi Tee Calculation Calculation Type Fixed Amount Inc Tax Quantity System Information Currency Australian Dollar	Royalty Source None Royalty Rate	

2. Enter the value and quantity of the item.

Information		
Fee Number		*Contract
		🕒 00000225 ×
* Summani		*Orcle
Software Subscription		Monthly
* Туре		Reason For Change
Software Subscription	•	Launch of new Business Management software.
* Start Date		Last Invoiced
1/01/2018	Ħ	ä
End Date		
End Date	苗	
End Date Description World's best CRM software for franchi	te businesses.	
End Date Description World's best CRM software for franchi Fee Calculation Calculation	te businesses.	
End Date Description World's best CRM software for franchi Fee Calculation *Calculation Type Fixed	se businesses.	
End Date Description World's best CRM software for franchi Fee Calculation •Calculation Type Fixed Amount for Tax	se businesses.	Rovalty Source
End Date Description World's best CRM software for franchi Fee Calculation *Calculation Type Fixed Amount Inc Tax 90.00	se businesses.	Royalty Source None
End Date Description World's best CRM software for franchi Fee Calculation •Calculation Type Fixed Amount Inc Tax 90.00 Quantity	the businesses.	Royalty Source None Royalty Rate
End Date Description World's best CRM software for franchi Fee Calculation *Calculation Type Fixed Amount Inc Tax 90.00 Quantity 2	se businesses.	Royalty Source None Royalty Rate
End Date Description World's best CRM software for franchi Fee Calculation Calculation Type Fixed Amount Inc Tax 90.00 Quantity 2 System Information	E businesses.	Royalty Source None Royalty Rate
End Date Description World's best CRM software for franchi Fee Calculation * Calculation Type Fixed Amount Inc Tax 90.00 Quantity 2 System Information Currency	The businesses.	Royalty Source -None Royalty Rate
End Date Description World's best CRM software for franchi Fee Calculation *Calculation Type Fixed Amount Inc Tax 90.00 Quantity 2 System Information Currency Australian Dollar	se businesses.	Royalty Source ~None ~ Royalty Rate

How to configure a royalty

Royalties allow you to charge a percentage of revenue. You can calculate a royalty based on invoices or on data imported from POS records.

To configure a royalty

1. From the Calculation Type field, select Royalty.

	Nev	v Fee			
Information					
Fee Number		* Contract			
		₿ 00000225			×
• Summary		* Cycle			
Management Fee		Monthly			•
* Туре		Reason For Change			
Management Fee	•				
* Start Data		Last Invoiced			li
1/01/2018	益	Last involced			#
End Date					
	莆				
Description					
					4
Fee Calculation					
Calculation Type					
Royalty	Ψ.				
Amount Inc Tax		Royalty Source			
		None			•
Ouantity		Rovalty Rate			
System Information					
Currency					
Australian Dollar	•				
			Cancel	Save & New	Save

2. From Royalty Source, choose which revenue record will be used to calculate the fee.

Information Fee Number				
Fee Number • Contract *summary • Cycle Management Fee • Cycle *Start Date Last Invoiced 1/01/2018 🗃 End Date 👘 Description 👘	Information			
*Summary Management Fee *Type Management Fee *Start Date 1/01/2018 End Date Description Fee Calculation Calculation Type Royalty Amount Inc Tax Quantity Quantity Quantity Currency Australian Dollar Currency Australian Dollar	Fee Number		* Contract	
*Summary Management Fee *Occle Monthly Reason For Change Management Fee *Start Date 1/01/2018 End Date Description Fee Calculation *Caculation Type Royalty Source -None- Quantity System Information System Information Currency Australian Dollar *Cycle Monthly *Cycle Monthly *Cycle Monthly *Cycle Monthly *Cycle Monthly *Cocle *Co			₿ 00000225	×
Management Fee *Type Management Fee *Start Date 1/01/2018 End Date End Date Description Fee Calculation Fee Calculation Currency Australian Dollar Monthly Reason For Change Last Invoiced Fee Calculation Fee Calculation Fee Calculation Fee Calculation	*Summary		* Cycle	
*Type Management Fee *Start Date 1/01/2018 End Date Description Fee Calculation Fee Calculation Type Royalty Royalty Amount Inc Tax Quantity Quantity Quantity System Information Currency Australian Dollar	Management Fee		Monthly	•
Management Fee *Start Date 1/01/2018 End Date Description Calculation Type Royalty Amount Inc Tax Quantity Quantity Quantity System Information System Information Currency Australian Dollar	• Туре		Reason For Change	
*Start Date 1/01/2018 End Date Description *Calculation *Calculation Type Royalty Amount Inc Tax Quantity Quantity Quantity System Information Currency Australian Dollar	Management Fee	•		
1/01/2018 End Date Description *Calculation *Calculation Type Royalty Royalty Royalty Source • -None Invoice System Information POS Currency Australian Dollar	* Start Date		Last Invoiced	li
End Date Description Fee Calculation *Calculation Type Royalty Amount Inc Tax Quantity Quantity System Information System Information POS	1/01/2018			i
Eveription	End Date			
Description Fee Calculation *Calculation Type Royalty Amount Inc Tax Quantity System Information Currency Australian Dollar		苗		
Fee Calculation *Calculation Type Royalty Amount Inc Tax Quantity Output System Information Currency Australian Dollar	Description			
Fee Calculation • Calculation Type Royalty Amount Inc Tax Quantity Quantity System Information Currency Australian Dollar				
Fee Calculation *Calculation Type Royalty Amount Inc Tax Quantity Quantity System Information Currency Australian Dollar				
Fee Calculation * Calculation Type Royalty Amount Inc Tax Quantity Quantity System Information Currency Australian Dollar				
				li li
Royalty Amount Inc Tax Quantity Quantity System Information System Information POS Currency Australian Dollar	Fee Calculation			4
Amount Inc Tax Quantity Quantity System Information Currency Australian Dollar	Fee Calculation *Calculation Type			li li
Quantity Quantity System Information Currency Australian Dollar	Fee Calculation *Calculation Type Royalty	•		li li
Quantity System Information Currency Australian Dollar	Fee Calculation Calculation Type Royalty Amount Inc Tax	•	Royalty Source	la la
System Information POS Currency Australian Dollar	Fee Calculation *Calculation Type Royalty Amount Inc Tax	•	Royalty Source None	•
System Information POS Currency Australian Dollar	Fee Calculation Calculation Type Royalty Amount Inc Tax Quantity	• •	Royalty Source None ✓None	
Currency Australian Dollar	Fee Calculation *Calculation Type Royalty Amount Inc Tax Quantity	•	Royalty Source None Invoice	
Australian Dollar 🔹	Fee Calculation *Calculation Type Royalty Amount Inc Tax Quantity System Information	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	Royalty Source None ✓None Invoice POS	•
	Fee Calculation *Calculation Type Royalty Amount Inc Tax Quantity System Information Currency	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	Royalty Source None Invoice POS	•
	Fee Calculation * Calculation Type Royalty Amount Inc Tax Quantity System Information Currency Australian Dollar	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	Royalty Source None Invoice POS	

3. In **Royalty Rate**, enter the percentage value, then press **Save**.

	Nev	v Fee
• • •		
Information		
Fee Number		* Contract
		■ 00000225 ×
* Summary		* Cycle
Management Fee		Monthly
* Туре		Reason For Change
Management Fee	•	
1/01/2018	#	Last Invoiced
End Data		
		
Description		
		4
Fee Calculation		
* Calculation Type		
Royalty	•	
Amount Inc Tax		Royalty Source
		Invoice 🔹
Quantity		Royalty Rate
		3.00%
System Information		
Currency		
Australian Dollar	•	
		Cancel Save & New Save
		Save a New Save

How to adjust a contract fee

There are times when you need to change a contract fee.



Annual CPI adjustments routinely require you to change fixed fees.

When you change a contract fee, you need to expire the current fee and then add a new fee. This is necessary to enable any further trailing fees at the current rate to be charged before switching to the new rate. It also maintains a record as to the fees historically charged on a contract.

To expire a contract fee

- 1. View all fees on a contract. See "How to view all fees on a contract" on page 44.
- 2. From the **Fees** list, locate the fee and select the **Edit** button.

• - ®			Q Search Sales	force				? 🖡 👩
***	Operations Manag	Home Chatter	Accounts 🗸 Con	tacts 🗸 Contracts 🗸	Management Logs	🗸 Invoices 🗸	Invoice Runs 🗸 🛛 🗸	lore 🔻 🎤
Contr Fee: 7 item	acts > 00000225 5 Is • Sorted by Fee Number • Up	odated an hour ago						New Ø • C ¹
	Fee number \downarrow \checkmark	түре 🗸	CALCULATION TY N	AMOUNT INC TAX ~	ROYALTY RATE	✓ START DATE	✓ END DATE	\sim
1	Fee-000167	Subscription	Fixed	\$1.00		1/01/2018		
2	Fee-000166	Subscription	Fixed	\$10.00		1/01/2018	_	
3	Fee-000164	Management Fee	Royalty		3.00%	1/05/2018	U —	
4	Fee-000163	Management Fee	Fixed	\$1,000.00		1/05/2018		
5	Fee-000162	Communications Levy	Fixed	\$45.00		1/05/2018	_	Edit
6	Fee-000161	Advertising Levy	Fixed	\$199.00		1/05/2018	9	
7	Fee-000160	Software Subscription	Fixed	\$90.00		1/05/2018	6 -	

The Edit Fee dialog box opens.

3. From the Edit Fee dialog box, Enter an End Date, then press Save.

Edit Fee	-000163
Fee Number Fee-000163 *Summary Management Fee Management Fee	Contract 00000225 • Cycle Monthly • Reason For Change
*Start Date 1/05/2018	Last Invoiced 15/05/2018
End Date 31/05/2018 Description	1
Fee Calculation	<i>h</i>
Calculation Type Fixed Amount las Tax	Provality Source
1,000.00	None
Quantity 1	Royalty Rate
System Information	
Created By OPS Finance Manager, 3/05/2018 10:36 AM Currency Australian Dollar	Last Modified By OPS Finance Manager, 8/05/2018 2:24 PM
	Cancel Save & New Save

The fee is now listed as having an **End Date**.

•-®			Q Search Salesf	orce				? 🖡 🐻
	Operations Manag	. Home Chatter	Accounts 🗸 Conta	acts 🗸 Contracts 🗸	Management Logs 🗸	Invoices 🗸	Invoice Runs 🗸 Mo	re 🔻 💉
Contr Fees 7 item	acts > 00000225 ; s • Sorted by Fee Number • U	pdated an hour ago						New total C ¹
	Fee number \downarrow \checkmark	TYPE 🗸	CALCULATION TY V	AMOUNT INC TAX 🗸	ROYALTY RATE	START DATE	✓ END DATE	\sim
1	Fee-000167	Subscription	Fixed	\$1.00		1/01/2018		•
2	Fee-000166	Subscription	Fixed	\$10.00		1/01/2018		•
3	Fee-000164	Management Fee	Royalty		3.00%	1/05/2018		•
4	Fee-000163	Management Fee	Fixed	\$1,000.00		1/05/2018	31/05/2018	
5	Fee-000162	Communications Levy	Fixed	\$45.00		1/05/2018		
6	Fee-000161	Advertising Levy	Fixed	\$199.00		1/05/2018		•
7	Fee-000160	Software Subscription	Fixed	\$90.00		1/05/2018		

This is the last date at which this fee will be charged.

4. Now that you have ended the previous fee, add a new fee to the contract. This new fee will serve as the "adjusted fee." *See* "How to add a contract fee" on page 46.

How to vary a contract

Once the contract has been signed, making changes to any of the key fields requires a contract variation. The contract variation is required in order to enable you to track any changes to the contract over time.

Changes to any of the following fields require a contract variation:

- » Account Id
- » Billing Address
- » Commencement Date
- » Company Number
- » Contract Record Type
- » Contract Term
- » Deposit Amount
- » Full Contract Number
- » Further Term Duration
- » Initial Fee
- » Legal Entity Name
- » Master Franchise Profile
- » Number Of Further Terms
- » Operating Structure
- » Start Date
- » Territory
- » Trading Name

To vary a contract

1. From the **Contract**, press **Create Variation**.

8	Q Search Contracts and more	★ 🖬 ? 🏟 🌲 🌘
Operations Manag Home Chatte	Accounts V Contacts V Contracts V Management Logs	✓ Invoices ✓ Payments ✓ More ▼
Contract 00000228	+ Follow	Create Variation Create Renewal Cease Contract
Account Name Status Contract Sta CS Artarmon Activated 1/06/2018	Date Contract End Date Contract Term (months) 31/05/2020 24	
· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	Activated Deactivation in Pr	Deactivated V Mark Status as Complete
DETAILS RELATED		ACTIVITY CHATTER
Contract Owner	Contract Number 00000228	Log a Call New Event New Tack More
Contract Name FCS Artarmon - Territory - Artarmon	Contract Version Number	
Status Activated	Territory Territory - Artarmon	Create new Add
Account Name FCS Artarmon	Master Franchise Profile FCS NSW	Activity Timeline
Type Of Agreement Initial	Purchase History PH-000033	Next Steps More Steps
Contract Start Date 1/06/2018	Previous Contract	No next steps. To get things moving, add a task or set up
Contract Term (months) 24	Number Of Further Terms 2 (Two)	meeting.
Contract End Date 31/05/2020	Further Term Duration (months) 12	Past Activity
Unexpired Contract Months 24		show up here.
✓ Initial Purchase Information		
Initial Fee	Personal Release Signed	
Deposit Amount \$5,000,00	Deposit Date	Activity Lists Add List
Balance Amount \$45,000.00	Balance Due Date 30/06/2018	NAME NUMBER OF TASKS COMPLETED TASKS

The Create A Contract Variation dialog box appears.

2. Enter the Contract Variation reason and Effective Date, then press Save.

Create A Contract Variation

* Contract Variation	* Effective Date
Other 💌	15/05/2018
* Reason for the Variation	
Modification in Initial Fee.	
	Save

The new contract version displays. It is given a new Contract Number and Contract Version Number. The contract itself is set to Draft so that it can be re-issued, signed and activated.

€ ®	Q Search Salesforce	*• 🖬 ? 🐥 🧑
Operations Manag Home Chatter	Accounts V Contacts V Management Log	s 🗸 Invoices 🗸 Expenses 🗸 More 🔻
Contract 00000231 Account Name Status Contract Start Date FCS Artarmon Draft 1/06/2018	Contract End Date Contract Term (months) 31/05/2020 24	follow Cease Contract Activate Create Variation
Draft Documents	Issued Signed	Activated V Mark Status as Complete
DETAILS RELATED		ACTIVITY CHATTER
Contract Owner OPS Compliance Manager Contract Name FCS Artarmon - Territory - Artarmon	Contract Number 00000231 Contract Version Number Contract087-v01	Log a Call New Event New Task More
Status Draft	Territory Territory - Artarmon	Create new Add
Account Name FCS Artarmon Type Of Agreement	Master Franchise Profile FCS NSW Purchase History	Activity Timeline
Variation Contract Start Date 1/06/2018	PH-000033 Previous Contract 00000228	Next Steps More Steps No next steps. To get things moving, add a task or set up a
Contract Term (months) 24	Number Of Further Terms 2 (Two)	meeting. Past Activity
Contract End Date 31/05/2020 Unexpired Contract Months	Further Term Duration (months) 12	No past activity. Past meetings and tasks marked as done show up here.
24		Load More Past Activities
Effective Date 15/05/2018	Contract Variation Other Reason for the Variation Modification in Initial Fee.	Activity Lists Add List
✓ Initial Purchase Information		
Initial Fee \$50,000.00	Personal Release Signed	
Deposit Amount \$5,000.00 Balance Amount	Deposit Date 1/05/2018 Balance Due Date	
\$45,000.00	30/06/2018	

You can now make the necessary changes to the contract preceding the issuing of the documents.

To activate the contract variation

- 1. When the contract is in *Draft* status, make any necessary changes to the contract.
- 2. Issue the document by pressing Mark Status as Complete.

The contract is in *Documents Issued* status.

3. Now press the **Activate** button.

This version of the contract is now *Activated* and the previous contract version is *Deactivated*.

How to renew a contract

Renewing a contract replicates the current contract (with new dates and decremented further terms) into a new contract. When you activate the renewal contract, the existing contract is deactivated.

To renew the contract

1. From the **Contract**, press **Create Renewal**.

•***	Q Search Contracts and more	* = ? + 5
Operations Manag Home Chatter	Accounts V Contacts V Contracts V Management Logs	✓ Invoices ✓ Payments ✓ More ▼
Contract 00000131	+ Follow	Create Variation Create Renewal Cease Contract
Account Name Status Contract Start D Jannis Bott Activated 18/10/2017	te Contract End Date Contract Term (months) 17/04/2018 6	
$\langle \cdot \rangle \rangle \rangle$	Activated Deactivation in Pr	Deactivated V Mark Status as Complete
DETAILS RELATED		ACTIVITY CHATTER
Contract Owner	Contract Number 00000131	
Status Activated	Contract Version Number	Log a Call New Event New Task More
Account Name Jannis Bott	Territory Territory - Kogarah	Create new Add
Type Of Agreement Initial	Master Franchise Profile FCS NSW	Activity Timeline
Contract Start Date 18/10/2017	Purchase History 🕕	Next Steps ····· More Steps
Contract Term (months) 6	Previous Contract	No next steps. To get things moving, add a task or set up a
Contract End Date 17/04/2018	Number Of Further Terms 3 (Three)	meeting. Past Activity
Unexpired Contract Months 6	Further Term Duration (months) 3	No past activity. Past meetings and tasks marked as done

The Create a renewal contract dialog box displays.

2. Press OK.

The renewal contract is displayed.

● *®	Q Search Contracts and more	* 🖬 ? 单 🐻
Operations Manag Home Chatter	Accounts V Contacts V Contracts V Management	it Logs 🗸 Invoices 🗸 Payments 🗸 More 🔻 🖋
Contract 00000232		+ Follow Activate Edit Clone Delete
Account Name Status Contract Start Date Jannis Bott Draft 18/04/2018	Contract End Date Contract Term (months) 17/07/2018 3	
Draft Documents	Issued Signed	Activated V Mark Status as Complete
DETAILS RELATED		ACTIVITY CHATTER
Contract Owner	Contract Number 00000232	
Status Draft	Contract Version Number	Log a Call New Event New Task More
Account Name Jannis Bott	Territory Territory - Kogarah	Create new Add
Type Of Agreement Renewal	Master Franchise Profile FCS NSW	Activity Timeline
Contract Start Date 18/04/2018	Purchase History 🕕	Next Steps More Steps
Contract Term (months) 3	Previous Contract 00000131	No next steps. To get things moving, add a task or set up a
Contract End Date 17/07/2018	Number Of Further Terms 2 (Two)	Past Activity
Unexpired Contract Months 3	Further Term Duration (months) 3	No past activity. Past meetings and tasks marked as done

Note the changes made to this contract.

To activate the renewal contract

1. Press the Activate button.

The **Confirm Activation** dialog box appears.

2. Press OK.



The renewal contract is now *Activated* and the previous contract *Deactivated*.

How to cease a contract

To cease a contract

1. From Contract, press Cease Contract.

● • • • • •	Q Search Salesforce	★ 🖬 ? 🏟 🌲 🐻
Operations Manag Home Chatter	Accounts V Contacts V Contracts V Management Logs	: 🗸 Invoices 🗸 Payments 🗸 More 🔻 🖋
Contract 00000119	+ Follow	Create Variation Create Renewal Cease Contract
Account Name Status Contract Start I Peter Stevens Activated 5/10/2017	Date Contract End Date Contract Term (months) 4/10/2020 36	
$\langle \cdot \rangle \cdot \rangle$	Activated Deactivation in Pr	Deactivated V Mark Status as Complete
DETAILS RELATED		ACTIVITY CHATTER
Contract Owner ECC Sales Manager	Contract Number 00000119	log a Call New Event New Task More
Status Activated	Contract Version Number	
Account Name Peter Stevens	Territory Territory (D) - Coogee	Create new Add
Type Of Agreement Initial	Master Franchise Profile FCS NSW	Activity Timeline
Contract Start Date 5/10/2017	Purchase History PH-000017	Next Steps ····· More Steps
Contract Term (months) 36	Previous Contract	No next steps. To get things moving, add a task or set up a
Contract End Date 4/10/2020	Number Of Further Terms 3 (Three)	meeting. Past Activity
Unexpired Contract Months 36	Further Term Duration (months) 12	Franchise @ 4:37 PM 05/10/2017

The Cease Contract dialog box appears.

2. Enter Cessation Reason and Cessation Date.

Cease	e Contract						
* Cessation Reason							
The Franchise Agreement Was Terminated	d By The Franchis	ee	•				
*Cessation Date							
13/05/2018			苗				
		Cance	Save				
he Contract is now	Deact	ivated.					
	Q	Search Salesforce					B? 🖡 🕅
					_ • •		
Operations Manag Home	Chatter Accour	its V Contacts V C	lontracts 🗸	Management Logs			re 🔻
Contract 00000226							+ Follow
Account Name Status Con FCS Coogee Deactivated 1/0	ntract Start Date 05/2018	Contract End Date 30/04/2020	Contract Te 24	rm (months)			
~	> ~	> ~		~ >	Deactivated	 Mark Status 	as Complete
DETAILS RELATED					ACTIVITY	CHATTER	
Contract Owner	2	Contract Number 00000226					
Status Deactivated		Contract Version Number			Log a Call	New Event New Ta	sk More
Account Name FCS Coogee		Territory Territory (D) - Coogee			Create new		Add
Type Of Agreement Initial	1	Master Franchise Profile FCS NSW			Activity Timelin	ie 🔻 C	Expand All
Contract Start Date 1/05/2018		Purchase History BH-000032			Next Steps		
Contract Term (months) 24		Previous Contract			No next steps. To	get things moving, add	a task or set up a
Contract End Date 30/04/2020		Number Of Further Terms 3 (Three)			Past Activity	meeting.	
Unexpired Contract Months 24		Further Term Duration (months 24)		No part activity	Past mostings and task	marked as done

The Contract Cessation function also places End Dates on Fees attached to the Contract.
How to generate contract documents

When you are satisfied that all relevant information has been entered on the **Contract** record, you can start the document generation.



During implementation a Franchise Cloud Solutions consultant will work with you to develop a custom document package.

You may have more than one document package available. Ensure you know which document package you need to use.

To start document generation

1. From the **Contract**, press **Select Document Package**.

Contract 0000020	17				+ Follow	Create F	ranchise Profile	Activate	Edit	Email Contrac	t 🔻
Account Name Bob Smith	Status Draft	Contract Start Date 30/03/2018	Contract End Date 29/03/2020	Contract Te 24	rm (months)						
Dr	aft	Documents Issu	ied	Signed			Activated		🗸 Mark	Status as Com	plete
DETAILS	RELATED						<table-cell> Drawle</table-cell>	оор	Sel	ect Document Pa	ackage
Contract Owner	anager		Contract Number 00000207				ACTIVITY	(
Status Draft			Territory Territory - St Ives								
Account Name Bob Smith			Unexpired Contract Mont 24	hs			Log a Call	New Eve	ent Ne	ew Task E	mail
Type Of Agreement Initial			Master Franchise Profile				Create r	new			Add
Contract Start Date 30/03/2018			Number Of Further Terms 1 (One)								
Contract Term (mor 24	nths)		Further Term Duration (m 24	onths)			Activity Tin	neline		C ^I Expa	and All
Contract End Date 29/03/2020			Commencement Date (2/04/2018				Next Steps	os. To got thi		More	Steps

One or more **Document Packages** appear.

🔁 Drawloop	
 Document Package 	Q
Contract Documents	
Email Contract	
Email Contract (DocuSign)	
Run Document Pa	ckage

2. Select the **Document Package** you need to generate.



Once you have clicked on the document package, the **Contact** pane opens revealing a list of contacts.

3. Select the Contact matching the person appearing in the Account Name field.

Contract 00000207				+ Follow	Create Fra	inchise Profile	Activate	Edit	Email Contract 🗨
Account Name Status Bob Smith Draft	Contract Start Date 30/03/2018	Contract End Date 29/03/2020	Contract Term 24	(months)					
Draft	Documents Issu	ued	Signed			Activated		🗸 Mark	Status as Complete
DETAILS RELATED						🗟 Drawl	оор		
Contract Owner		Contract Number 00000207				> Documen	t Package		CONTRACT DOCUMENTS
Status Signed	/	Contract Version Number				✓ Contact			Q
Account Name Bob Smith	1	Territory Territory - St Ives				Non	e		
Type Of Agreement Initial		Master Franchise Profile FCS NSW							
Contract Start Date 30/03/2018		Purchase History PH-000027				Bob b.sm	Smith ith@handywa	y.com.au	
Contract Term (months) 24		Number Of Further Terms 1 (One)				L= Marl	ene Smith		
Contract End Date 29/03/2020		Further Term Duration (me 24	onths)						
		Unexpired Contract Month 24	hs			> Documen	t Selection		
		Commencement Date (2/04/2018				> Delivery C	ption		REQUIRED

4. Select each document you need to generate, then press Next.

民 Drawloop	
> Document Package CONTRACT D	DCUMENTS
> Contact	BOB SMITH
 Document Selection 	Q
Franchise Agreement Optional Document	~
Professional Advice Report Optional Document	~
Document Receipt Optional Document	
Schedule 1 - All Current Franchisees Optional Document	
Schedule 2 - Ceased Franchisees Optional Document	
Schedule 3 - Pre Owned Territory Optional Document	
	Next
> Delivery Option	REQUIRED
Run Document	Package

5. Select the **Download** delivery option, then press **Run Document Package**.



The document package shows a progress bar as it generates the documents.

民 Drawloop							
> Document Package	CONTRACT DOCUMENTS						
> Contact	BOB SMITH						
> Document Selection	SELECTED						
> Delivery Option	DOWNLOAD						
40%							
acquiring data							

You may have the choice of Download and Email delivery options.

6. When the document generation is complete, select each document you wish to down-load.



9

You can select each document in rapid succession. Each will begin to download as soon as it is ready.

7. When the documents have downloaded, you can find them in your web browser's default Downloads folder.



How to issue contract documents

Contract documents can be issued via email or manually.

To issue documents via email

1. From the **Contract**, press **Email Contract**.

Contract 0000020	17				+ Follow	Create F	ranchise Profile	Activate	Edit	Email Contract	•
Account Name Bob Smith	Status Draft	Contract Start Date 30/03/2018	Contract End Date 29/03/2020	Contract Te 24	erm (months)						
Dr	aft	Documents Issu	led	Signed			Activated		Mark	Status as Comple	ete
DETAILS	RELATED						R Drawlo	ор			
Contract Owner	anager		Contract Number 00000207				Document	t Package	Com	plete	
Status Draft			Territory Territory - St Ives					0207 - Marc	:h 13, :	2018 - Franchis	se
Account Name Bob Smith			Unexpired Contract Mon 24	iths				0207 Marc	-h 12 -	2018 Drofossi	onal
Type Of Agreement Initial			Master Franchise Profile FCS NSW				Advic	e Report.do	сх	2010 - PIOlessi	Una
Contract Start Date 30/03/2018			Number Of Further Term 1 (One)	IS			Start	Modify		Re-run Documen	t
Contract Term (mor 24	nths)		Further Term Duration (r 24	nonths)			Over	Run		Package	
Contract End Date 29/03/2020			Commencement Date 2/04/2018	0			ACTIVITY				

An email details page appears.

2. Select the recipient Contact, the Optional Documents and the relevant Attachments, then press Run.

CONTRACT 00000207	0	
« BACK TO CONTRACT		
On this page you can select a contact (if a	pplicable), select a Document Package to run, and choose how you want to deliver the D	ocument Package.
1. Specify the contact for the Documer Bob Smith \$	nt Package:	
2 Select Optional Documents to Include 7 Franchising Code of Conduct 8 Information Statement	ttachments: 2 00000207 · March 9, 2018 - Franchise Agreement.docx (Contract) 2 00000207 · March 9, 2018 - Professional Advice Report.docx (Contract) 2 00000207 · March 9, 2018 - Schedule 1 - All Current Franchisees.docx (Contract) 2 00000207 · March 9, 2018 - Schedule 2 - Ceased Franchisees.docx (Contract) 2 00000207 · March 9, 2018 - Ocument Receipticatox (Contract) 2 00000207 · March 9, 2018 - Schedule 3 - Pre Owned Territory Letter.docx (Contract)	
 Choose a delivery method for the Documer Email Run Cancel 	nt Package:	

The system mail merges the documents, converts them to PDF, and then presents you with a **Send an Email** page.

Ľ

Attachments can include documents you have edited outside the system and uploaded to Salesforce via the **Contract Related** tab's **Notes and Attachments** field. 3. Review all the relevant fields, edit the standard email body as needed and review the attachments. When you are ready, press **Send**.

Send	an Email	
	From "Franchise Cloud Solutions" <hello@franchisecloudsolutions.com></hello@franchisecloudsolutions.com>	
	Related To	
	Contract	
	Additional To	
	20	
	BCC	
	Subject	
	Franchise Agreement Documents	
	Body	
	FRANCHISE CLOUD SOLUTIONS	
	Dear Bob,	
	Please find the attached franchise sales agreement documents for your	
	review and signature.	
	Please feel free to reach out if you have any queries.	
	Thank you,	
	Cancel Send	
Attachments		
Action	File	Size
Del	File - Franchising Code of Conduct.pdf	781 KB
Del	File - Information Statement For Prospective Franchisees pdf	56 KB
Del	File - 00000207 - March 9, 2018 - Franchise Agreement.pdf	80 KB
Del	File - 00000207 - March 9, 2018 - Professional Advice Report.pdf	160 KB

Del	File - 00000207 - March 9, 2018 - Schedule 1 - All Current Franchisees.pdf	266 KB
Del	File - 00000207 - March 9, 2018 - Schedule 2 - Ceased Franchisees.pdf	180 KB
Del	File - 00000207 - March 9, 2018 - Document Receipt.pdf	154 KB
Del	File - 00000207 - March 9, 2018 - Schedule 3 - Pre Owned Territory Letter.pdf	86 KB

4. The system automatically advances to the **Documents Issued** status and sets the Documents Issued date.

Contract 00000207	,			+ Follow	Create F	ranchise Profile A	Activate Edit	Email Contract	•
Account Name Bob Smith	Status Documents Issued	Contract Start Date 30/03/2018	Contract End Date 29/03/2020	Contract Term 24	(months)				
~	2	Documents Issued	Signed			Activated	✓ Mar	k Status as Comple	te
DETAILS	RELATED					🔒 Drawloop	D Se	elect Document Pack	age
Contract Owner REC Sales Mar Status Documents Issued	nager	Cor 000 Terr Terr	itract Number 000207 itory ritory - St Ives			ACTIVITY			
Account Name Bob Smith Type Of Agreement		Uno 24 Ma:	expired Contract Months			Log a Call	New Event N	lew Task Ema	il
Contract Start Date 30/03/2018		Nur 1 (1	nber Of Further Terms One)			Activity Timeli	ine		
Contract Term (mont 24 Contract End Date 29/03/2020	ns)	Fun 24 Cor 2/(her Term Duration (months) nmencement Date 04/2018			Next Steps		More St	eps
						No next steps.	To get things movi	ng. add a task or set	up a
1	lf any key fi	elds are eo	dited after the	docum	ents	are issue	ed, the o	contract	S

To issue documents manually

- 1. Download the documents (*See* "How to generate contract documents" on page 65) then issue them outside the system.
- 2. Advance the contract to the *Documents Issued* stage. Select Documents Issued then press Mark as Current Stage.

Contract 00000208				+ Follow	v Create Franchise Profile	Activate	Edit Email Contract	•
Account Name Megan Ames	Status Draft	Contract Start Date	Contract End Date	Contract Term (months)	2			
Draft		Documents Iss	sued	Signed	Activated		Mark as Current Status	

How to sign issued contract documents

Document signing is performed outside the system, and the Contract record is updated to reflect progress.

In compliance with the Australian Competition & Consumer Commission Franchising Code of Conduct, there must be fourteen days between the Documents Issued Date and the Customer Signed Date.

To sign the contract documents

- 1. Sign the documents outside the system.
- 2. In the Contract Details tab's Contract Execution section, enter the Customer Signed Date and Customer Signed By fields.

	Customer Signed By Bob Smith	
Documents Issued Date 13/03/2018	Customer Signed Date 27/03/2018	
 Contract Execution 		

3. Press Mark Status as Complete. The Contract advances to the *Signed* status.



How to activate a contract

When the contract has been signed and has become effective, Operations Management will automatically move the **Contract** into the *Activated* status.



 \mathcal{O} 1

Franchise Profile Accounts

Understanding franchise profile accounts	77
Franchise setup	78
How to create a franchise profile account	
How to add a territory	80
How to add a contact	81
Franchise commencement	
Completing franchise information	
How to configure a franchise for job allocation	
How to add a company asset	
How to add an insurance policy	
Pre-commencement checklist	
How to find contract fees for a franchise	
Franchise cessation	
How to discontinue a franchise	
How to transfer franchise ownership	
How to configure a franchise profile for job allocation	
Mandatory settings	
Travel distance origin	
Maximum travel distance	
Business hours	

Daily and weekly offer targets	110
Territory only job offers	110
Temporary unavailability of franchisee	.111
Off system franchisees	.114
Job notifications	115

Understanding franchise profile accounts

Franchise Profile Accounts represents the franchise operating entity. Settings on the Franchise Profile Account are used to control:

- » Job Allocation
- » Contact details
- » Trading hours
- » Defaults used on quotes and invoices

Beyond the franchise settings, the Franchise Profile Account ties together:

- » the franchise owner
- » the contract
- » the territory
- » the mastery territory to which this territory belongs

How Franchise Profile Accounts are created will depend on what software options your business has licensed and how you are currently using Operations Management.

- If you have licensed Franchise Cloud Solutions Franchise Recruitment, Franchise Profile Accounts will be created using Franchise Recruitment and migrated to Operations Management.
- If you have licensed Operations Management alone and you are entering Franchise Profile Accounts for new franchisees, you will want to create a Contract and then generate the Franchise Profile Account. See "To create a Franchise Profile Account" on the next page.

Visibility of the franchise profile account

The Franchise Profile Account (together with Jobs, Accounts, Contacts, Territories and Territory Locations) is shared between the franchisor and the franchisee. Any information stored on, or attached to, the Franchise Profile Account is visible to the franchisee.

When franchisors wish to record private information relating to a franchisee, a Management Log must be used. *See* "Understanding management logs" on page 176.

Franchise setup

Franchise Profile Accounts contain a wide range of information. Some of this information is known during the sale of a franchise. Other elements may only be known shortly before the franchisee begins trading.

When you first create the Franchise Profile Account, you may wish to enter only basic information. You can add details over time.

How to create a franchise profile account

The best way to create a Franchise Profile Account is by generating one from a Contract. When the Contract is set up, the Franchise Profile Account can then be generated from the information already contained in the Contract.

To create a Franchise Profile Account

1. From the Contract, press the **Create Franchise Profile** button.

•••®_	Q Search Contracts and r	nore		* 🖬 ? 🖡 🛅
Operations Manag Home Cha	er Accounts 🗸 Contacts 🗸	Contracts 🗸 Management I	Logs 🗸 Invoices 🗸 Paym	ents 🗸 More 🔻 🖕
Contract 00000234		+ Follow Crea	ate Franchise Profile Activate	Edit Clone Delete
Account Name Status Contract Start I Greg Landy Draft 1/06/2018	ate Contract End Date 31/05/2019	Contract Term (months) 12		
Draft Docur	nents Issued	Signed	Activated	✓ Mark Status as Complete
DETAILS RELATED			ACTIVITY	HATTER
Contract Owner OPS Finance Manager	Contract Number 00000234			and Maria Maria
Status Draft	Contract Version Number		Log a Call New Eve	ent New lask More
Account Name Greg Landy	Unexpired Contract Months 12		Create new	Add
Type Of Agreement Initial	Territory Territory - Dee Why		Activity Timeline	Y C Expand All
Contract Start Date 1/06/2018	Master Franchise Profile		Next Steps	
Contract Term (months) 12	Commencement Date (1) //07/2018		No next steps. To get thir	ngs moving, add a task or set up a
Contract End Date 31/05/2019	Number Of Further Terms 2 (Two)		Past Activity	meeting.
	Further Term Duration (mor 24	nths)	No past activity. Past me	etings and tasks marked as done ow up here.

The Create Franchise Profile dialog box appears.

2. Press OK.

The new Franchise Profile Account appears. Information from the Contract has been copied across. You can edit it further to complete the information.

•*®	Q Search Salesforce	*• 🖬 ? 🐥 🐻
Operations Manag Home Chatter	Accounts V Contacts V Management Log	gs 🗸 Invoices 🗸 Payments 🗸 More 💌 🖋
Account Territory - Dee Why		+ Follow Edit
Billing Address Status Status Reason Inactive		
DETAILS RELATED		ACTIVITY CHATTER
Account Name Territory - Dee Why	Account Owner	Log a Call New Event New Task More
Parent Account	Email	
Status Inactive	Phone	Create new Add
Status Reason	Fax	Activity Timeline
Inactive Reason	Cell Member Role	Next Steps More Steps
Field Manager	Primary Cell Group	No next steps. To get things moving, add a task or set up a
Timezone	Secondary Cell Group	meeting.
Next Review Due Date		
Next Review Date		No past activity. Past meetings and tasks marked as done show up here.
		Load More Past Activities

Note that you are the account owner and will remain the account owner until the franchisee obtains access to Business Management. When the franchisee obtains access to Business Management their user account will become the owner of this record.

How to add a territory

You need to link the Franchise Profile Account to a territory. This is performed from the Territory record.

Ask your system administrator to add the Franchise Profile Account and Account Owner to the Territory record. When that is done, the Territory will appear in the **Franchise Profile Account**'s **Related** tab.

•*®	Q Search Accounts	and more			? 🖡 🐻
Operations Manag Home Chatter	Accounts 🗸 Contacts	s 🗸 Contracts 🔨	 Management Logs 	✓ Invoices ✓ Payments ✓ More	• •
Account FCS Artarmon				+ Fo	llow Edit
DETAILS RELATED				ACTIVITY CHATTER	
X We found no potential duplicates of this No duplicate rules are activated. Activate duplicate rules to	account.	e records.		Log a Call New Event New Task	More Add
Related Contacts (1) Hal Gregory Account N FCS Artarmon Title:		New Contact Ac	d Relationship	Activity Timeline	Expand All More Steps
Email:	View All			No next steps. To get things moving, add a meeting. Past Activity	task or set up a
Contracts (Franchise Profile) (0)			New	No past activity. Past meetings and tasks a show up here.	narked as done
X Territories (1)			New		Activities v
TERRITORY NAME STATUS TER	RITORY OWNER AC	CTIVE			
Territory - Artarmon Unowned Ha	Gregory 🗸	•	•	Activity Lists	Add List
	View All			NAME NUMBER OF TASKS COMP	LETED TASKS

How to add a contact

When there are franchise contacts outside the franchisee, you will need to add them to the Franchise Profile Account.



Examples of other contacts include employees or contractors of the franchisee.

To add a contact to the Franchise Profile Account

1. From the Account, select the Related tab.

•*®	Q Search Accounts and more	* 🖬 ? 单 🐻
Operations Manag Home Chatter	Accounts V Contacts V Contracts V Management Logs	✓ Invoices ✓ Payments ✓ More ▼
Account FCS Artarmon		+ Follow Edit
Billing Address Status Status Reason Inactive		
DETAILS RELATED		ACTIVITY CHATTER
Account Name FCS Artarmon Parent Account	Account Owner	Log a Call New Event New Task More
Status Inactive	jill.kennedy@gmail.com Phone 0431 668 997	Create new Add
Status Reason	Fax	Activity Timeline
Inactive Reason Contract Negotiation	Cell Member Role	Next Steps More Steps
Field Manager	Primary Cell Group	No next steps. To get things moving, add a task or set up a meeting.
Timezone Australia/Sydney GMT+1000	Secondary Cell Group	Past Activity
Next Review Due Date Next Review Date		No past activity. Past meetings and tasks marked as done show up here.
		Load More Past Activities

2. From Related Contacts, press New Contact.

•••	Q Search Accounts and more	** = ? + 🐻
•••• Operations Manag Home Chatter	Accounts V Contacts V Management	Logs 🗸 Invoices 🗸 Payments 🗸 More 🔻 💉
Account FCS Artarmon Account		+ Follow Edit
Inactive		
DETAILS RELATED		ACTIVITY CHATTER
We found no potential duplicates of this No duplicate rules are activated. Activate duplicate rules to	account. 9 identify potential duplicate records.	Log a Call New Event New Task More
Related Contacts (0)	New Contact Add Relationship	Activity Timeline
Contracts (Franchise Profile) (0)	New	Next Steps More Steps
🔯 Territories (0)	New	No next steps. To get things moving, add a task or set up a meeting. Past Activity
Management Logs (0)	New	No past activity. Past meetings and tasks marked as done show up here.
Invoices (0)	New	Load More Past Activities 🔻
The New Contact dialog	box appears.	

New Contact			
Select a record type	Franchise Contact		
	Contact type for franchise contacts		
	 Contact Contact type for general contacts 		
	Cancel		

3. Choose Franchise Contact if the contact will be employed by the franchise. Otherwise choose the general Contact type. Press Next.

The **New Contact** detail entry dialog box appears.

4. Complete the details and press **Save**.

New	Contact:	Contact
	00110000	00110000

* Name		Contact Owner	
Salutation		OF51 marice Mariager	
Mr.	•		
First Name]		
Hal			
* Last Name			
Gregory			
Account Name		Phone	
FCS Artarmon	×	0431 668 997	
Title		Home Phone	
		02 8809 7642	
Reports To		Mobile	
Search Contacts	Q	0431 668 997	
Department		Fax	
Birthdate		Email	
	苗		
Address Information			
Mailing Address		Other Address	
Mailing Street		Other Street	
96 Burns Road			
	1		
Mailing Suburb	Mailing State	Other Suburb	Other State
Wahroonga	NSW		
Mailing Postcode	Mailing Country	Other Postcode	Other Country
2076	Australia		
Marketing Information			
Preferred Communication Channel		Unsubscribe	
Email	•		
		SMS Unsubscribe 🚯	

The new contact is now added to the account.

-a	Q Search Accounts and more	★ 🖬 ? 单 🧔
Operations Manag Home Chatter	Accounts V Contacts V Contracts V Management	Logs 🗸 Invoices 🗸 Payments 🗸 More 🔻 💡
FCS Artarmon		+ Follow Edit
Billing Address Status Status Reason Inactive		
DETAILS RELATED		ACTIVITY CHATTER
We found no potential duplicates of this No duplicate rules are activated. Activate duplicate rules t	account. o identify potential duplicate records.	Log a Call New Event New Task More
		Create new Add
Related Contacts (1)	New Contact Add Relationship	Activity Timeline
Hal Gregory Account N FCS Artarmon	•	Next Steps ····· More Steps
Email:		No next steps. To get things moving, add a task or set up a meeting.
	View All	Past Activity
Contracts (Franchise Profile) (0)	New	No past activity. Past meetings and tasks marked as done show up here.
X Territories (0)	New	Load More Past Activities 🔻

Ensure the Related Contact representing the franchisee is set to the Role of *Franchise Owner*.

To specify the contact's role

1. From Related Contacts, open Show more and select View Relationship.



The Account Contact Relationship page displays.

2. Click Edit, select the *Franchise Owner* Role then press Save.

• * ®	All 🔻 🔍 Search Salesforce	* 🖬 ? 单 🐻
Operations Manag Home	Chatter Accounts V Contacts V Contracts V Management	t Logs ∨ Invoices ∨ Payments ∨ More▼ 🖋
Account Contact Relationship Bob Smith		Edit Relationship
Territory - St Ives		
RELATED DETAILS		
✓ Account Contact Relationship Inform	nation 1	
Account Territory - St Ives	Roles Technical Buyer Other Franchisee Owner	
Contact Bob Smith		
✓ System Information		
Created By REC Sales Manager, 14/03/2018 10:57 AM	Last Modified By REC Sales Manager, 14/03/2018 10:57 AM	

Franchise commencement

Prior to the franchisee gaining access to Business Management, you will want to ensure that all necessary information is entered onto their Franchise Profile Account.

Completing franchise information

Much of the information within a Franchise Profile Account can be seen by the franchisee. Much is editable by them, but not all. Here is a guide as to what is visible, and what the franchisee may edit.

» Visible to franchisee» Visible and editable	
Account Information	
* Account Name	Account Owner OPS Finance Manager
Parent Account	Email
Search Accounts Q	
Status	Phone
None 🔻	
Status Reason	Fax
None	
Inactive Reason	Cell Member Role
	None
Field Manager	Primary Cell Group
Search People Q	None
Timezone	Secondary Cell Group
Search Timezones Q	None
Next Review Due Date	
	
Next Review Date	
Date Time	
ii (0)	
Business Information	
Legal Entity Name	Business Number
Trading Name	Company Number
Operating Structure	

Address Information

Billing Address Billing Street		Shipping Address Shipping Street	
Billing Suburb	Billing State	Shipping Suburb	Shipping State
Billing Postcode	Billing Country	Shipping Postcode	Shipping Country

Invoice Summary Information

Tax Exempt	Has Overdue Balance
Total Invoice Amount 🕕	Overdue Balance
Amount Paid 🚯	Debtors 0-15 days
Amount Outstanding	Debtors 16-30 days
Credit Balance	Debtors 31-45 days
	Debtors 46+ days
Accounts Receivable Notes	

Quote & Invoice Information

Payment Terms On Completion	Accounting Sequence Name
Default Tax Rate	
	Default Markup %
	Default Hourly Rate

Payment Method Information

Cash	Bank Account Name
Cheque	Bank Account BSB
Credit Card	Bank Account Number
Direct Deposit	Paypal
Eftpos	Paypal Email

Job Allocation Information

No Timeout	Max Travel Distance
Unavailable	Unavailable From
Off System	
Notification Preference	Unavailable Redirect
None	Search Accounts Q
Notification SMS	Territory Only
	Tarritory Och Start Data
	Territory Only End Date
	ä
Location Information	
State	
Job Offer Information	
Daily Offer Target	Weekly Offer Target
Current # Daily Offers	Current # Weekly Offers
	Last Job Offer Date
	Last Job Date
Financial Information	
Break Even Point Target	Gross Profit Target
Profit Allowance Target	Gross Profit Actual
	Resale Target
Other Information	
Insurance End Date	Referrer
ä	Search Contacts Q
	Source
	ivone
System Information	
* Master Franchise	Account Record Type Franchise Profile
Search Accounts Q	
* Account Currency	

How to configure a franchise for job allocation

Configure the Franchise Profile Account with appropriate settings, based on your licensing options and the size and nature of the territory. *See* "How to configure a franchise profile for job allocation" on page 103.

How to add a company asset

Company owned assets can be registered against the Master Franchise Profile Account.

To add an asset to the register

1. From the Franchise Profile Account, select **Related**.

3	All 🔻	Q Search Accounts	and more			*-	• ?	¢
Operations Manag	Home Chatter Ac	counts 🗸 Contact	is 🗸 Contracts 🗸	Management Logs	✓ Invoices ✓	Payments 🗸	More▼	
Account VIC Master					2 - 410 17 - (686697041		+ Follo	w Edi
pe Phone We	bsite Account Own	ner ance Manager 🔊	Account Site	Industry				
Details Related		21/24/05-723.			Connection Sta	tus View Map	ping	Disconnec
					ECEVIC - Connecto	d		
Account Name		Account Owner			FCS VIC : Connecte	d		
Account Name VIC Master		Account Owner	Manager	£	FCS VIC : Connecte	d		
Account Name VIC Master Master Franchise		Account Owner	Manager	2	FCS VIC : Connecte	d Chatter		
Account Name VIC Master Master Franchise Australia Master		Account Owner	Manager	2	FCS VIC : Connecte	d Chatter		
Account Name VIC Master Master Franchise Australia Master Status		Account Owner	Manager	£ 	FCS VIC : Connecte	d Chatter		
Account Name VIC Master Master Franchise Australia Master Status Active		Account Owner	Manager	2	FCS VIC : Connecte	d Chatter		
Account Name VIC Master Master Franchise Australia Master Status Active Status Reason		Account Owner	Manager	2	FCS VIC : Connecte	d Chatter		
Account Name VIC Master Master Franchise Australia Master Status Active Status Reason		Account Owner	Manager	2	Activity Email Create new	d Chatter		Add
Account Name VIC Master Master Franchise @ Australia Master Status @ Status Reason @ Inactive Reason @		Account Owner	Manager	2 / / /	ECS VIC : Connecte Activity Email Create new	d Chatter		Add

2. On the **Related** tab, locate the **Assets Register** and press **New**.

• - ®	All 👻 🔍 Search Account	ts and more			★• ?) 🏚 🖨 🔯
Operations Manag Home	Chatter Accounts 🗸 Conta	cts 🗸 Contracts 🗸	Management Logs	✓ Invoices ✓	Payments 🗸 More	
Account VIC Master				2	+ Fo	Sllow Edit
Type Phone Website	Account Owner	Account Site	Industry			
Details Related	as of this account			Connection St FCS VIC : Connec	tatus View Mapping	Disconnect
No duplicate rules are activated. Activate dupli	cate rules to identify potential duplic	ate records.		Activity	Chatter	
Assets (1)			New	Email		
ASSET NAME SERIAL NUMBER	INSTALL DATE	QUANTITY		Create new		Add
2012 Fiat Scudo Van 8392732827282	23/01/2018	1.00		Fil	ters: All time • All activities	• All types 🔻
	View All				R	efresh Expand All

The New Asset Register dialog box appears.

3. Complete the details for the new asset then press **Save**.

	New Asse	t Register			
Information					
		Current			
lim'r Mobile Phone		ALID - Australian Dol	lar		-
		AOD - Australian Doi	idi		•
Asset Number					
Make Model 🚯					
iPhone 7					
Serial Number					
C395K9Z3BFYE					
Purchase Date					
20/12/2017	ä				
Warranty Expiry					
19/12/2018	苗				
Purchased From					
Apple Store Doncaster					
Asset Details (1)					
35 921907 678239 0					
	h				
Purchase Price					
749					
Reminder Date 🚯					
1/12/2019	i				
Status					
Owned	•				
* Account					
FCS Ringwood	×				
			Cancel	Save & New	Save

4. The new asset is now added to the register.

a		All 👻 🔍 Search Accou	nts and more			🗄 ? 🌣 🌲 🌔
Operations Mar	nag Home Ch	natter Accounts 🗸 Cont	acts 🗸 Contracts 🗸	Management Logs	V Invoices V Payments V	∕ More▼
Account VIC Master		ANGU MARANA DIST	/ (<i>1111 - </i> 1167 - 1840)	(C))(C)	ZANGI (MUUMU (SSO)	+ Follow Edit
ype Phone	Website	Account Owner Image: State Stat	Account Site	Industry		
Details Relate	d				Connection Status View M	Mapping Disconnect
We found no n	otontial duplicator o	f this account			FCS VIC : Connected	
No duplicate rules are ac	tivated. Activate duplicate	rules to identify potential dupli	cate records.		Activity Chatter	
Assets (2)				New	Email	
ASSET NAME	SERIAL NUMBER	INSTALL DATE	QUANTITY		Create new	Add
Jim's Mobile Phone	C39SK9Z3BFYE	20/12/2018	1.00			
2012 Fiat Scudo Van	8392732827282	23/01/2018	1.00		Filters: All time • A	Refresh Expand A
		View All			Next Steps More St	eps

If you insert a reminder date for an asset, you will receive an email on the reminder date notifying you to take action.

How to add an insurance policy

Insurance policies can be added to a list of policies held against the Master Franchise Profile Account.

To add an insurance policy

- 1. From the Master Franchise Profile Account, select **Related**.
- 2. On the Related tab, locate Insurance Policies and press New.

The **New Insurance Policy** dialog box appears.

3. Complete the details for the new policy then press **Save**.

New Insurance Policy				
Information				
* Insurance Policy Name	Currency			
Workers Compensation	AUD - Australian Dollar			
Insurer	Туре 🚯			
CGU	Public Liability 🔻			
Status	Compulsory			
Active	▼			
*Account	Expiration Date 🕕			
FCS Ringwood	× 15/05/2019			
	Cancel Save & New S			

4. The new policy is now added to the list.



Your will be sent an email 30 days prior to the expiry of each insurance policy reminding you to renew the policy.

Pre-commencement checklist

Before a new franchisee begins trading, you will want to check that everything is set up correctly.

To check the setup for a new franchisee

1. The Franchise Profile Account Status is Active.

4 -8		Q Search Accounts and m	ore	*• 🖶 ? 单 🐻
Operations Manag	Home Chatter	Accounts 🗸 Contacts 🗸	Contracts 🗸 Management Logs	✓ Invoices ✓ Payments ✓ More ▼
Account FCS Artarmon				+ Follow Edit
Billing Address Status Active	Status Reason			
DETAILS RELATED				ACTIVITY CHATTER
Account Name FCS Artarmon		Account Owner	er£	Log a Call New Event New Task More
Parent Account		Email jill.kennedy@gmail.com		Log a Call New Event New Task More
Status Active		Phone 0431 668 997		Create new Add
Status Reason		Fax		Activity Timeline
Inactive Reason		Cell Member Role		Next Steps More Steps
Field Manager		Primary Cell Group		No next steps. To get things moving, add a task or set up a
Timezone Australia/Sydney GMT+1000		Secondary Cell Group		meeting. Past Activity
Next Review Due Date				No past activity. Past meetings and tasks marked as done
Next Review Date				show up here. Load More Past Activities

2. The Franchise Profile Account has its Job Allocation Information correctly configured.

••••	Q Searc	h Accounts and mo	ore					• 8 ?	. 🔊
Operations Manag Home Chatte	r Accounts 🗸	Contacts 🗸	Contracts 🗸	Management	Logs 🗸	Invoices 🗸	Payments 🗸	More 🔻	
FCS Artarmon 🔺								+ Follow	Edit
\checkmark Job Allocation Information									
No Timeout	Max Trav 10	el Distance							
Unavailable Off System	Unavaila Unavaila	ole From							
Notification Preference 2-Way SMS & Email	Unavaila	ole Redirect							
Notification SMS 0431 668 997	Territory	Only							
	Territory	Only Start Date Only End Date							
✓ Job Offer Information									
Daily Offer Target	Weekly 0	Offer Target							
Daily Offer Variance	Weekly (F Weekly Offers							
Daily Offer Variance Flag	Last Job	Offer Date							
Days Since Last Job Offer	Last Job	Date							

3. The contract's **Document Issued Date** is at least two weeks before the **Customer Signed Date**.

• - ®	Q Search Salesforce		** 🖪 ? 🌣 单 🔄
•••• Operations Manag Home Chatter	Accounts 🗸 Contacts 🗸 Contrac	ts 🗸 Management Logs 🗸 Invo	ices 🗸 Payments 🗸 More 🔻 🖋
≌ 00000228	+ Follow	v Create Franchise Profile Activ	ate Edit Email Contract Clone 🖵
✓ Initial Purchase Information		No pas	st activity. Past meetings and tasks marked as done
Initial Fee \$50,000.00	Personal Release Signed		Load More Past Activities
Deposit Amount \$5,000.00	Deposit Date 1/05/2018		
Balance Amount \$45,000.00	Balance Due Date 30/06/2018	/ E	Activity Lists Add List
✓ Compliance Information		NAME	NUMBER OF TASKS COMPLETED TASKS
Legal Entity Name 🕚	Business Number		
Trading Name	Company Number		
Operating Structure			
✓ Contract Execution			
Documents Issued Date 1/05/2018	Customer Signed Date 18/05/2018	1	
	Customer Signed By Hal Gregory		

4. The **Contract**'s **Commencement Date** is correctly set.

	Q Search Salesforce	Managament Logo	🗶 🖬 ? 🌣 单 🐻
Operations Manag Home Chatter		Management Logs V Invoices V	✓ Payments ✓ More ♥ 🧳
Contract 00000228	+ Follow Cre	eate Franchise Profile Activate	Edit Email Contract Clone 🔻
Account Name Status Contr FCS Artarmon Documents Issued 1/06	act Start Date Contract End Date Cont /2018 31/05/2020 24	ract Term (months)	
Document	s Issued Signed	Activated	✓ Mark Status as Complete
DETAILS RELATED		ACTIVITY	CHATTER
Contract Owner	Contract Number 00000228	Log a Call	New Event New Task More
Status Documents Issued	Territory Territory - Artarmon	Log a call	New Lvent New lask Wore
Account Name FCS Artarmon	Unexpired Contract Months 24	Create ne	W Add
Type Of Agreement Initial	Master Franchise Profile FCS NSW	Activity Time	eline
Contract Start Date 1/06/2018	Number Of Further Terms 2 (Two)	Next Steps	
Contract Term (months) 24	Further Term Duration (months) 12	No next steps.	To get things moving, add a task or set up a
Contract End Date 31/05/2020	Commencement Date () 1/07/2018	Past Activity	meeting.

5. The **Contract** has been **Activated**.

6	Q Search Salesforce	🖈 🖬 ? 🌣 🗯 👼
Operations Manag Home Chatter	Accounts V Contacts V Contracts V Manager	ment Logs 🗸 Invoices 🗸 Payments 🗸 More 🔻 🖋
Contract 00000228	+	Follow Create Variation Create Renewal Cease Contract
Account Name Status Contract Start D FCS Artarmon Activated 1/06/2018	ate Contract End Date Contract Term (months) 31/05/2020 24	
$\langle \cdot \rangle \cdot \rangle$	Activated Deactivation in	Pr Deactivated V Mark Status as Complete
DETAILS RELATED		ACTIVITY CHATTER
Contract Owner	Contract Number 00000228	Log a Call New Event New Task More
Status Activated	Contract Version Number	
Account Name FCS Artarmon	Territory Territory - Artarmon	Create new Add
Type Of Agreement Initial	Master Franchise Profile FCS NSW	Activity Timeline
Contract Start Date 1/06/2018	Purchase History BH-000033	Next Steps More Steps
Contract Term (months) 24	Previous Contract	No next steps. To get things moving, add a task or set up a
Contract End Date 31/05/2020	Number Of Further Terms 2 (Two)	Past Activity
Unexpired Contract Months 24	Further Term Duration (months) 12	No past activity. Past meetings and tasks marked as done

6. Fees have been correctly entered onto the Contract, and they have a Start Date that matches the Contract Commencement Date.

•-®			Q Search Salesforc	e			🕁 🖬 ? 🌣 🏚	. (5)
• • • • • • • • •	Operations Manag	Home Chatter	Accounts 🗸 Conta	icts 🗸 Contracts 🗸	Management Logs 🗸 🗸	Invoices 🗸	Payments 🗸 More 🔻	a mail
Contr Fees 3 item	acts > 00000228 5 is • Sorted by Fee Number • Up	dated a few seconds ago					۸ پې ب	lew C ¹
	FEE NUMBER \downarrow \checkmark	TYPE V	CALCULATION TY \checkmark	Amount inc tax $$	ROYALTY RATE	START DATE	\checkmark END DATE \checkmark	
1	Fee-000182	Management Fee	Royalty		3.00%	1/07/2018		•
2	Fee-000181	Software Subscription	Fixed	\$90.00		1/07/2018		•
3	Fee-000180	Management Fee	Fixed	\$1,000.00		1/07/2018		•

How to find contract fees for a franchise

To view all fees on a contract

1. From Accounts, select the Franchise Profile Accounts list view.

• - ®			Q Search	Accounts and m	iore					• ? • 👼
***	Operations Manag Ho	me Chatter	Accounts 🗸	Contacts 🗸	Contracts	~	Management Log	s 🗸 Invoic	es 🗸 Invoice Runs 🗸	More 🔻 🧳
E	Accounts		-1							New
9 item	s Q		•						\$\$ ▼	
	RECENT LIST VIEWS		-2			NG SUE	BURB 🗸 I	BILLING STATE	V ACCOUNT OWN	NER AL 🗸
1	All Accounts		_			i		1SM	swalker	•
2	Franchiso Brofilo Accounts					ford	1	1SM	ocomp	
3	Hanchise Frome Accounts					ее		1SM	stev	•
4	 Recently Viewed 					i	1	1SM	ofran	•
5	ALL OTHER LISTS					ubra	1	1SW	bsmit	•
6	Business Accounts					≩y	1	1SW	ooffi	•
7	Employment Candidate Accou	inte							sadmi	
8		1103							ooper	
9	Franchise Sales Accounts					≩y	1	1SW	sadmi	•

2. Select the relevant account.

•-®			Q Search Accounts	and more			*	
•••	Operations Manag	Home Chatter	Accounts 🗸 Contacts	s 🗸 Contracts 🗸	 Management Log 	s 🗸 Invoices 🗸	🗸 Invoice Runs 🦴	🗸 More 🔻 💉
27 ite	Accounts Franchise Profile Accou	unts ▼ ount Record Type・U	odated a few seconds ago				\$ • III •	New C' 🖍 C Y
	ACCOUNT NAME	✓ STATUS ↑	✓ BILLING STR ✓	BILLING SU 🗸	BILLING STA \checkmark	BILLING PO 🗸	MASTER FRA \checkmark	PHONE V EM
1	FCS Bondi	Active	210 Bondi R	Bondi	NSW	2026	FCS NSW	
2	FCS Maroubra	Active	Level 1, Suite	Maroubra	NSW	2035	FCS NSW	0412111111
3	FCS Kingsford	Active	502-508 Anz	Kingsford	NSW	2032	FCS NSW	
4	FCS Coogee	Active	101 Brook St	Coogee	NSW	2034	FCS NSW	444333219
5	FCS Bondi Beach	Active	11 Beach Road	Bondi	NSW	2026	FCS NSW	0411123456
6	Tile Rescue Balmain	Active	59 Grove Str	Birchgrove	NSW	2041	FCS NSW	0424163136
7	FCS Greenwich	Active	10 Geroge St	Greenwich	NSW	2065	FCS NSW	040000000

3. From the Account, select the Related tab.

4 -00	Q Search Accounts and more		*• 🖬 ? 单 🐻
Operations Manag Home	Chatter Accounts V Contacts V C	ontracts 🗸 Management Logs 🗸 Invoic	es 🗸 Invoice Runs 🗸 More 🔻 🖋
Account FCS Maroubra			+ Follow Edit
Billing Address Status Level 1, Suite 4/166 Rd Active Maroubra NSW 2035 Australia	Status Reason		
DETAILS RELATED		ACTIV	CHATTER
Account Name FCS Maroubra	Account Owner	£ 1000 C	all New Svent New Task More
Parent Account	Email		an new Event New Task More
Status Active	Phone 0412111111	Creat	Add
Status Reason	Fax	Activity 7	imeline
Inactive Reason	Cell Member Role	Next Ste	ps More Steps
Field Manager	Primary Cell Group	No next s	teps. To get things moving, add a task or set up a
Timezone	Secondary Cell Group	Past Act	meeting.
Next Review Due Date		No past a	activity. Past meetings and tasks marked as done
Next Review Date			show up here. Load More Past Activities

4. Locate the Contracts section, and select the contract whose Status is Activated.

-a	Q Search Accou	nts and more			*• 🖬 ? 🌲 🐻
Operations Manag Home Chatter	Accounts 🗸 Conta	icts 🗸 Contract	ts 🗸 Management Log	s 🗸 Invoices 🗸 Invoice	Runs 🗸 More 🔻 🥒
Account FCS Maroubra	ason				+ Follow Edit
Level 1, Suite 4/166 Rd Active Maroubra NSW 2035 Australia					
DETAILS RELATED				ACTIVITY CHA	ITTER
We found no potential duplicates of this No duplicate rules are activated. Activate duplicate rules	account.	ate records.		Log a Call New Even	t New Task More
				Create new	Add
Related Contacts (1)		New Contact	Add Relationship	Activity Timeline	C ^t Expand All
Bill Smith Account N FCS Maroubra	v			Next Steps	
Email: bill@smith.com				No next steps. To get thing	s moving, add a task or set up a eeting
	View All			Past Activity	
Contracts (Franchise Profile) (1)			New	No past activity. Past meet show	ings and tasks marked as done up here.
O0000225 CS Maroubra Account Na FCS Maroubra Status: Activated Contract Sta 1/05/2018	•				oad More Past Activities
	View All			Activity Lists	Add List

5. Note the contract's current details. When ready, select the **Related** tab.

••	Q Search Salesforce	*• 🖬 ? 单 🐻
Operations Manag Home Chatt	rer Accounts V Contacts V Contracts V Management Log	gs 🗸 Invoices 🗸 Invoice Runs 🗸 More 🔻 🖋
Contract 00000225	+ Follow	Create Variation Create Renewal Cease Contract
Account Name Status Contract St. FCS Maroubra Activated 1/05/201	art Date Contract End Date Contract Term (months) 8 30/04/2020 24	
$\langle \cdot \rangle \rangle \rangle$	Activated Deactivation in Pr	Deactivated V Mark Status as Complete
DETAILS RELATED	-2	ACTIVITY CHATTER
Contract Owner OPS Finance Manager	Contract Number 00000225	Log a Call New Event New Task More
Status Activated	Contract Version Number	
Account Name FCS Maroubra	Territory Territory (D) - Maroubra	Create new Add
Type Of Agreement Initial	Master Franchise Profile FCS NSW	Activity Timeline
Contract Start Date 1/05/2018	Purchase History PH-000031	Next Steps More Steps
Contract Term (months) 24	Previous Contract	No next steps. To get things moving, add a task or set up a
Contract End Date 30/04/2020	Number Of Further Terms 3 (Three)	meeting.
Unexpired Contract Months 24	Further Term Duration (months) 24	No past activity Dast meetings and tasks marked as done
✓ Initial Purchase Information		show up here.
Initial Fee \$50,000.00	Personal Release Signed ✓	
Deposit Amount \$5,000.00	Deposit Date 1/04/2018	
Balance Amount \$45,000.00	Balance Due Date 30/04/2018	Add List Activity Lists Add List NAME NUMBER OF TASKS COMPLETED TASKS

6. From the **Fees** section, press **View All**.

• - ®		Q Search	Salesforce				*	8? 🖡 🌔	5
•••• Operations	Manag Home Chat	ter Accounts 🗸	Contacts 🗸 Co	ontracts 🗸 Ma	anagement Logs	✓ Invoices ✓	Invoice Runs 🗸	More 🔻 💡	
Contract 00000225					+ Follow	Create Variation	Create Renewal	Cease Contract	
Account Name FCS Maroubra	Status Contract S Activated 1/05/201	tart Date Contr 18 30/0	act End Date 4/2020	Contract Term (m 24	ionths)				
~	\rangle \checkmark \rangle	~	Activated	Deactivat	tion in Pr	Deactivated	✓ Mark Sta	tus as Complete	
DETAILS	RELATED					ACTIVITY	CHATTER		
🖹 Fees (6+)					New	Log a Call	New Event New	Task More	
FEE NUMBER	TYPE	CALCULATION TYPE	AMOUNT INC	. TAX					
Fee-000167	Subscription	Fixed	\$1.00	•		Create new.		Add	
Fee-000166	Subscription	Fixed	\$10.00	•					
Fee-000164	Management Fee	Royalty		•		Activity Timelir	ne 🔻	C ^I Expand All	
Fee-000163	Management Fee	Fixed	\$1,000.00			Next Steps			
Fee-000162	Communications Levy	Fixed	\$45.00	•		No next steps. To	get things moving, a	dd a task or set up a	
Fee-000161	Advertising Levy	Fixed	\$199.00			De et A etimit	meeting.		
		View All				No past activity	Past meetings and ta	sks marked as done	

The Fees list shows all past and present fees associated with the Contract.

Franchise cessation

How to discontinue a franchise

To cause a franchise to cease to trade, you need to deactivate the **Contract** and then set the **Franchise Profile Account** to a Status of *Inactive*.

- To discontinue a franchise
- 1. From the Franchise Profile Account's Related tab, select the currently *Activated* Contract.

• B	Q Search Accounts and more						*• 8	? 🌲 👼	
Operations Manag Home Chatter	Accounts 🗸 Cont	acts 🗸 Contra	icts 🗸	Management Logs	✓ Invoices ∖	 Payments 	✓ More	•	
Account FCS Coogee							+ Follo	w Edit	
Billing Address Status Status Reason 101 Brook St Active Coogee NSW 2034 Australia									
DETAILS RELATED	-1				ACTIVITY	CHAT	ΓER		
We found no potential duplicates of this account. No duplicate rules are activated. Activate duplicate rules to identify potential duplicate records.					Log a Call	New Event	New Task	More	
						N		Add	
Related Contacts (1)		New Contact	Add Re	lationship	Activity Time	line	C C	Expand All	
ES Peter Stevens Account N FCS Coogee	•				Next Steps				
Email: peter.stevens@franchisecloudsol					No next steps. To get things moving, add a task or set up a meeting.				
View All					Past Activity				
Contracts (Franchise Profile) (1)						No past activity. Past meetings and tasks marked as done show up here.			
00000226 Account Na FCS Coogee Status: Activated Contract Sta 1/05/2018	•							ctivities 🔻	
	View All				¥∃ Activit	y Lists		Add List	

The **Contract** appears.

2. Cease the contract. See "How to cease a contract" on page 63.
3. Now go back to the Account.

€ ®	Q Search Salesforce	*• 🖬 ? 🐥 👼
Operations Manag Home Chatter	Accounts V Contacts V Contracts V Management Logs	✓ Invoices ✓ Payments ✓ More ▼
Contract 00000226		+ Follow
Account Name Status Contract Start I FCS Coogee Deactivated 1/05/2018	Date Contract End Date Contract Term (months) 30/04/2020 24	
$\langle \cdot \rangle $	·	Deactivated V Mark Status as Complete
DETAILS RELATED		ACTIVITY CHATTER
Contract Owner OPS Finance Manager	Contract Number 00000226	log a Call New Event New Task More
Status Deactivated	Contract Version Number	
Account Name FCS Coogee	Territory Territory (D) - Coogee	Create new Add
Type Of Agreement Initial	Master Franchise Profile FCS NSW	Activity Timeline
Contract Start Date 1/05/2018	Purchase History 1 PH-000032	Next Steps More Steps
Contract Term (months) 24	Previous Contract	No next steps. To get things moving, add a task or set up a
Contract End Date 30/04/2020	Number Of Further Terms 3 (Three)	meeting.
Unexpired Contract Months 24	Further Term Duration (months) 24	No past activity. Past meetings and tasks marked as done

4. From the Account, mark the Status as Inactive.

•**®	Q Search Salesforce	*• 🖬 ? 🜲 🐻
Operations Manag Home Chatter	Accounts V Contacts V Contracts V Management Logs	s 🗸 Invoices 🗸 Payments 🗸 More 👻 🖋
Account FCS Coogee		+ Follow Edit
Billing Address Status Status Reason 101 Brook St Inactive Coogee NSW 2034 Australia		
DETAILS RELATED		ACTIVITY CHATTER
Account Name FCS Coogee	Account Owner	
Parent Account	Email	Log a Call New Event New Task More
Status Inactive	Phone 444333219	Create new Add
Status Reason	Fax	Activity Timeline
Inactive Reason	Cell Member Role	Next Steps More Steps
Field Manager	Primary Cell Group	No next steps. To get things moving, add a task or set up a
Timezone	Secondary Cell Group	meeting. Past Activity
Next Review Due Date		No part activity. Part mostings and tasks marked as done
Next Review Date		show up here.

You have now ceased the contract and inactivated the franchise. The franchise has been discontinued.

How to transfer franchise ownership

To transfer ownership of a franchise

- 1. Create the new **Contract** and **Franchise Profile Account**. *See* "Franchise setup" on page 78.
- 2. Insert the Cessation Date for the current franchisee's Contract. See "Franchise cessation" on page 100.
- 3. Ensure the Commencement Date for the new franchisee's Contract is set one business day after the current franchisee's Cessation Date.
- 4. On the day of the transfer, ask your system administrator to transfer the **Territory** from the current **Franchise Profile Account** to the new franchisee's **Franchise Profile Account**.

When you transfer franchise ownership, you may also need to transfer the customer base. To do this, *See* How to transfer customer accounts.

How to configure a franchise profile for job allocation

The job allocation process interacts heavily with the structure of accounts, territories and territory locations. Franchise-level settings strongly influence how jobs are allocated. Read these topics in conjunction with:

- » "Understanding Job Allocation" on page 119
- "Managing Job Allocation" on page 143

Mandatory settings

For jobs to be allocated

1. The Franchise Profile Account must have a Status of Active.

• ` ®	Q Search A	accounts and more	2			★• 8 ?	\$	6
Operations Manag Home	Chatter Accounts 🗸	Contacts 🗸	Contracts 🗸	Management Logs	✓ Invoices ✓ * CN	-00001 🗸 X	More 🔻	a mart
FCS Bondi Beach					+ Follo	w Edit C	reate New Job	
Billing Address Status Status f 11 Beach Road Active Bondi NSW 2026 Australia	Reason							
DETAILS RELATED					ΑCTIVITY	HATTER		
Account Name FCS Bondi Beach	Account	Owner on Walker			Log a Call Now F	opt Now Task	Moro	
Parent Account	Email Ioryn.jei	nkins@franchised	loudsolutions.co	im /			. More	
Status Active	Phone 041112	3456			Create new		Add	
Status Reason	Fax				Activity Timeline	T C'	Expand All	
Inactive Reason	Cell Merr	ber Role			Next Steps			
Field Manager	Primary C	ell Group			No next steps. To get th	ings moving, add a	task or set up	а
Timezone Australia/Sydney GMT+1000	Secondar	y Cell Group			Past Activity	meeting.		
Next Review Due Date					> Invoice - IN	V-0 @ 7:44 F	M 18/05 🔻	
Next Review Date 23/03/2018 12:00 PM					OPS Finance Simon Walke	Manager sent an e	mail to	

2. The Franchise Profile Account must have a valid Timezone.

- D	Q Search Accounts and more	★ 🖬 ? 🌣 🖡 🐻
Operations Manag Home Chatter	Accounts V Contacts V Contracts V Management Log	gs ∨ Invoices ∨ °CN-00001 ∨ × More ▼ 🖋
Account FCS Bondi Beach		+ Follow Edit Create New Job
Billing Address Status Status Reason 11 Beach Road Active Bondi NSW 2026 Australia		
DETAILS RELATED		ACTIVITY CHATTER
Account Name FCS Bondi Beach Parent Account	Account Owner	Log a Call New Event New Task More
Status Active	Phone 0411123456	Create new Add
Status Reason	Fax	Activity Timeline
Inactive Reason	Cell Member Role	Next Steps More Steps
Field Manager OPS Field Manager	Primary Cell Group	No next steps. To get things moving, add a task or set up a meeting.
Australia / Sydney GMT+1000 Next Review Due Date		Past Activity
Next Review Date 23/03/2018 12:00 PM		Invoice - INV-0 Ø 7:44 AM 18/05 OPS Finance Manager sent an email to Simon Walker

3. The Franchise Profile Account must be related to at least one Territory.

•-®		Q Search A	ccounts and mor	e			*	• 🖬 ? 🕸	: 🜲 🐻
Operations Manag	Home Chatter	Accounts 🗸	Contacts 🗸	Contracts 🗸	Management Logs	✓ Inv	oices 🗸 Payments	✓ * More ▼	. mart
FCS Bondi Beach 🔺							+ Follow	Edit Create	New Job
S Territories (1)					New				ties 🔻
TERRITORY NAME STATUS	TI	ERRITORY OWNER	ACTIVE						
Territory (D) - Bondi Owned	Si	imon Walker	1			¥≘	Activity Lists		Add List
		View All				NAM	E NUMBER OF TASK	S COMPLETED) TASKS

4. The Territory must be Active.

• ` ®	Q Search Salesforce		🖈 🗄 ? 🌣 单 🐻
Operations Manag Home Chatter	Accounts 🗸 Contacts 🗸 Co	ontracts 🗸 Management Logs 🗸 Invo	oices 🗸 Payments 🗸 * More 💌 🖋
Territory Territory (D) - Bondi Beach			Edit Delete Clone 🗸
Status Franchise Owner Owned FCS Bondi Beach	d Office Manager ≰ੇ	Master Territory Master Territory - NSW	
DETAILS RELATED			
Territory Name Territory (D) - Bondi Beach		Franchise FCS Bondi Beach	
Status Owned		Territory Owner Simon Walker	
Sub Status		Territory Owners Mobile 0431661077	
Product Bronze Territory		Country 🕕 Australia	
Product Classification Bronze		State 🕕 NSW	
Type Metro		Territory Number TER-451	
Active		Timezone Australia/Sydney GMT+1000	

5. The **Territory** must have one or more **Territory Locations**.

• - ®			Q Sea	rch Salesforce							*	8	¢	6
•••• Operatio	ons Manag	Home Chatter	Accounts	✓ Contacts	~	Contracts	V N	lanagement Log	s v	Invoices 🗸	Payments	✓ * Mo	re 🔻	
Territory Territor	y (D) - Bondi Be	each									Edit	Delete	Clone	•
Status Owned	Franchise FCS Bondi Beach	Owner	d Office Man	ager 🖍	Active	2	Master Te Master Te	rritory erritory - NSW						
DETAILS	RELATED													
🔯 Territo	ry Locations (2)												New	
TERRITORY LO	CATION NAME	SUBURB			POST	TCODE			ST	ATE				
2026-BONDI	BEACH	BONDI BEAC	н		202	6			N	SW			•	Т
2026-NORTH	BONDI	NORTH BONI	DI		202	6			N	SW			V	
					v	/iew All								

- 6. Travel distance origin must be set. *See* "Travel distance origin" below.
- 7. Max travel distance must be set. *See* "Maximum travel distance" on the next page.
- 8. Business hours need to be set. *See* "Business hours" on page 107.

Travel distance origin

The travel distance origin provides the geographic center of the area being served by the franchise. The travel distance origin might reference franchisee's work address. However, it may be better to have it reference the street address closest to the geographic center of the territory.

To set the travel distance origin

1. From the Location Information section, enter the exact street address (Street, Suburb, State, Postcode) of the location used for the travel distance origin.

All 🗸	Q bondi beach	★ 🖬 ? 🅸 单 🐻
Operations Manag Home Chatter	Accounts V Contracts V Management Logs V	Invoices 🗸 Payments 🗸 More 🕷 🖋
FCS Bondi Beach 👗		+ Follow Edit Create New Job
✓ Location Information		
Street	Travel Distance Origin	
29 Sir Thomas Mitchell Rd	Latitude	
	Longitude	
Suburb	Geo-code Accuracy	
Bondi Beach		
State		
NSW		
Postcode	I	
2026	J	
✓ Job Offer Information Cancel	el Save	

2. Press Save.

The travel distance origin is calculated automatically. When you next open the **Account**, you will see the calculated Latitude and Longitude recorded in Travel Distance Origin.

• ` @	All 💌	Q bondi beach			
Operations Manag Hor	ne Chatter	Accounts 🗸 Contacts 🗸 Contracts 🗸	Management Logs 🗸 🗸	Invoices 🗸 Pay	rments 🗸 More 🔻 🖋
FCS Bondi Beach 👗				+ Follow	Edit Create New Job
\checkmark Location Information					
Street 29 Sir Thomas Mitchell Rd		Travel Distance Origin -33.8921444 , 151.2710367	1		
Suburb Bondi Beach		Geo-code Accuracy ROOFTOP			
State NSW					
Postcode 2026					

Maximum travel distance

The Max Travel Distance from the Travel Distance Origin defines the jobs for which this franchise will be considered for job potential.

To set the maximum travel distance

1. Enter the number of kilometers the franchisee is willing to travel, then press **Save**.

a		Q Search Salesforce			★ 🖬 ? 🌣 🌲 🐻
Operations Manag Home	Chatter	Accounts 🗸 Contacts 🗸	Contracts 🗸 Manage	ement Logs 🗸 Invoid	ces 🗸 Payments 🗸 * More 💌 🥖
FCS Bondi Beach 👗					+ Follow Edit Create New Job
\checkmark Job Allocation Information					
No Timeout		Max Travel Distance			
		10			
Unavailable		Unavailable From			
					
Off System		Unavailable To			
					
Notification Preference		Unavailable Redirect			
2-Way SMS & Email	•	Search Accounts		Q	
Notification SMS		Territory Only			
0431661077					
Notification Contact		Territory Only Start Date		_	
💷 Simon Walker	×				
		Territory Only End Date			
		31/05/2018		苗	
	Cancel	Save			

Business hours

When the Master Franchise Profile Account's Job Allocation Configuration is set to make Offers Inside Contact Hours Only, then Franchise Profile Accounts require contact hours to be set.

Failing to set contact hours will result in fewer job offers being made to the franchise. To configure business contact hours

1. From the **Franchise Profile Account**, select the **Related** tab.

8	All 🔻	Q Search Accounts and more	*- 🖬 ? 单 👼
Operations Manag	Home Chatter	Accounts V Jobs V Job Offers V Job Schedu	ile Invoices 🗸 Payments 🗸 More 🕷 🦼
Account FCS Ringwood			+ Follow Edit
pe Phone 0404 303 808	Website	Account Owner Account Site	Industry
Details Related			Connection Status
Sync Status		Account Owner	FCS Ringwood : Connected
Account Name FCS Ringwood		Email Email Franchisecloudsolutions.com	Activity Chatter
Master Franchise VIC Master		Phone 0404 303 808	Log a Call Email
Status Active		Fax	
Status Reason 🕕		Cell Member Role	Create new Add
Inactive Reason 🚯		Primary Cell Group	Filters: All time • All activities • All types
Field Manager 🚯		Secondary Cell Group	Refresh Expand All
Timezone			Next Steps More Steps

2. Scroll down to the **Business Hours** section, and create **New** records for your daily business hours.

• - ®		All 👻 🔍 Search Ac	counts and more			Ţ	E ? .	6
Operations Manag	. Home (Chatter Accounts 🗸	Jobs 🗸 🛛 Job Offers	✓ Job Schedule	Invoices 🗸	Payments 🗸	More 🔻	ø
FCS Ringwood		-					+ Follow	Edit
Business Hours (5)				New				
BUSINESS HOURS DAY		START TIME	END TIME					
BH-000074 Mond	ау	06:00 AM	09:30 PM					
BH-000076 Tuesd	ау	06:00 AM	09:30 PM					
BH-000079 Wedn	esday	06:00 AM	09:30 PM					
BH-000080 Thurs	day	06:00 AM	09:30 PM					
BH-000081 Friday		06:00 AM	09:30 PM					
		View All						

When a **New** record is created, the **New Business Hours** dialog box displays.

3. Leave the record type as Contact Hours and press Next.

I	New Business Hours	
Select a record type	Contact Hours Working Hours	
		Cancel Next

The New Business Hours: Contact Hours dialog box displays.



Only ever set Contact Hours. The job allocation system does not recognize Working Hours.

4. Complete the details for the new Contact Hours, then press Next.

information				
Business Hours Number		*Day 🚯		
		Saturday		•
Account 🚯		* Start Time 🕚		
FCS Ringwood	×	09:30 AM		•
System Information		* End Time 0 04:30 PM		¥
		Record Type		
AUD - Australian Dollar	•	Contact Hours		

New Business Hours: Contact Hours

5. Your **Business Hours** are now updated.

•••®	All 👻 🔍 Search Ac	counts and more		*• 🖶 ? 🌲 👼	
Operations Manag Home	Chatter Accounts 🗸	Jobs 🗸 🛛 Job Offers	✓ Job Schedule	Invoices 🗸 P	łayments ∨ More▼ 🖋
FCS Ringwood					+ Follow Edit
Business Hours (6)			New		
BUSINESS HOURS DAY	START TIME	END TIME			
BH-000074 Monday	06:00 AM	09:30 PM			
BH-000076 Tuesday	06:00 AM	09:30 PM			
BH-000079 Wednesday	06:00 AM	09:30 PM			
BH-000080 Thursday	06:00 AM	09:30 PM			
BH-000081 Friday	06:00 AM	09:30 PM			
BH-000083 Saturday	09:30 AM	04:30 PM			
	View All				

Daily and weekly offer targets

Daily and weekly offer targets represent the ideal number of job offers to be provided to this franchise through franchisor-originated job requests. In the default implementation, when daily and weekly offer targets are set the system attempts to distribute the target number of job offers to each franchise.



Check your site implementation notes to understand how your system has been configured.

To set the daily and weekly offer targets

1. Enter the Daily Offer Target.



2. Enter the Weekly Offer Target, then press Save.



Territory only job offers

It is possible to limit a franchise to receiving job offers from the owned territory only. This can be set as a regular provision of the contract or as a temporary measure to improve the management of the franchise.

If any dates have been set, franchisees cannot switch off Territory Only.

To restrict a franchise to territory-only offers

Check the Territory Only check box.

FRANCHISE CLOUD SOLUTIONS						Al	▼ Q Se	earch Accour	its and more			
Operations Manag	Home	Chatter	Accounts 🗸	Contacts	\sim	Contracts 🗸	Manageme	ent Logs 🗸 🗸	Invoices 🗸	Payments 🗸	Expenses 🗸	Jobs 🗸
FCS - Claymore												
\checkmark Job Allocation Information												
No Timeout						Max 10	ravel Distance					
Off System						Unav	ilable					
Notification Preference 2-Way SMS & Email						Unav	ilable From					
Notification SMS 0421788574						Unav	ilable To					
Notification Contact John Smith						Unav	ilable Redirect					
						Territ	ory Only					1
						Territ	ory Only Start Da	te				1
						Territ	ory Only End Dat	e				

To restrict a franchise to territory-only offers from predetermined start and end dates

» Enter the Territory Only Start Date and the Territory Only End Date

FRANCHISE CLOUD SOLUTIONS						All	Search Acc	ounts and more			
Operations Manag	Home	Chatter	Accounts 🗸	Contacts	\sim	Contracts 🗸	Management Logs	V Invoices V	Payments 🗸	Expenses 🗸	Jobs 🗸
Account FCS - Claymore											
\checkmark Job Allocation Information											
No Timeout						Max Tr 10	avel Distance				
Off System						Unavai	able				
Notification Preference 2-Way SMS & Email						Unavai	able From				
Notification SMS 0421788574						Unavai	able To				
Notification Contact John Smith						Unavai	able Redirect				
						Territor	y Only				1
						Territor 11/09	y Only Start Date 9/2019				1
						Territor 4/10/	y Only End Date 2019				- 1

Temporary unavailability of franchisee

Whether it is holidays, temporary sickness or a huge project causing the franchisee to be unavailable for new job offers, you can indicate franchisee unavailability to receive new job offers. You can also redirect any job offers that would have been received to another franchise. This can be useful where franchisees have agreed to cover each other during planned vacation leave.

To indicate that a franchise is unavailable to receive job offers

Check the Unavailable check box.

FRANCHISE CLOUD SOLUTIONS		All 👻 Q Search Accounts and more
•••• Operations Manag Home Chatter	Accounts 🗸 Contacts 🗸 Contract	is V Management Logs V Invoices V Payments V Expenses V Jobs V
FCS - Claymore		
✓ Job Allocation Information		
No Timeout	1	Max Travel Distance
Off System	1	Unavailable
Notification Preference 2-Way SMS & Email	1	Unavailable From
Notification SMS 0421788574		Unavailable To
Notification Contact John Smith		Unavailable Redirect
		Territory Only
		Territory Only Start Date 11/09/2019
		Territory Only End Date 4/10/2019

To indicate that a franchise is unavailable to receive job offers from predetermined start and end dates

» Enter the Unavailable From and the Unavailable To dates.

	FRANCHISE CLOUD SOLUTIONS								All 🔻	Q Search A	Accoun	ts and more	·					
••••	Operations Manag	Home	Chatter	Accounts	~	Contacts	\sim	Contracts	\sim	Management Log	¦s ∨	Invoices	\sim	Payments	\sim	Expenses	\sim	Jobs 🗸
F	Account FCS - Claymore																	
~	Job Allocation Information																	
No	Timeout							,	/lax Trav	vel Distance								
									LO									
Off	System							ι	Jnavaila	able								
Not	ification Preference							, l	Jnavaila	ible From								
2-V	Vay SMS & Email							_	1/09/	/2019								
Not	ification SMS							, I	Jnavaila	ible To								
04	21788574								9/10/2	2019								
Not	ification Contact							, I	Jnavaila	able Redirect								
101	in Smith																	
									erritory	Only								
								l		0.1.0.4.0.4								
									erritory	/2019								
								-	orritory	Only End Date								
								4	+/10/2	2019								

The Unavailable checkbox will be switched on once the Unavailable From date is reached. If the Unavailable From date is set to today's date, it will be switched on overnight.

To redirect job offers from an unavailable franchisee to another franchisee

In conjunction with any of the unavailability options, check the Unavailable Redirect check box

C	FRANCHISE							All 🔻	Q Search A	ccount	s and more						
••••	Operations Manag	Home	Chatter	Accounts 🗸	Contacts	\sim	Contract	\sim	Management Logs	- ×	Invoices	\sim	Payments 🔨	 Expe 	enses 🔨	∕ Jo	obs 🗸
E	Account FCS - Claymore																
~	Job Allocation Information																
No	Timeout							Max Trav LO	vel Distance								
Of	f System							Jnavaila	ible								
No 2-	utification Preference Way SMS & Email							Jnavaila 11/09/	able From /2019								
No 04	otification SMS 921788574							Jnavaila 9/10/2	ible To 2019								
No Jo	otification Contact						-	Jnavaila -CS - C	ble Redirect ampbelltown								1
							(Territory	Only								1
								Territory 11/09/	Only Start Date								
								Ferritory	Only End Date 2019								

Off system franchisees

While it is ideal that every franchisee use the system, there are cases where it is prudent to allow some franchisees not to use Business Management. These franchisees still need an active Franchise Profile Account, an active contract with the requisite contract fees. They will still be configured for Job Allocation. The only difference is that they will not log in and use Business Management for management of their jobs, invoices and payments.



You should not allow off system franchisees where their contract fees contain royalties based on invoice value.

You may allow contract fees containing fixed fees and royalties based on POS data.

An off system franchisee will still receive emails or SMSs to notify them of job offers. When they accept the job offer, they will receive an email containing a summary of the job details. They can use the email summary to contact the customer and win the job.

To mark a franchisee as being off system

» Check the Off System check box.

tite Operations Manage Home Chatter		Q bondi beach	Management Loge	Impicos	Paumontr. N.	Exponent of	iohr vi	• ?	
operations manag nome chatter	Accounts	contacts V contracts V		Invoices V	Payments V	Lxpenses V	1003 V	WOIE *	
FCS Bondi Beach 🔺						+ Follow	Edit	Create	New Job
✓ Job Allocation Information									
No Timeout		Max Travel Distance 10 Unavailable From							
Off System	/	Unavailable To							
Notification Preference 2-Way SMS & Email	1	Unavailable Redirect							
Notification SMS 0431661077		Territory Only							
		Territory Only End Date							

Job notifications

Franchisees can view job offers in Business Management. They can also view them within the Salesforce mobile app. By default, franchisees can be notified of job offers by email.

If you have licensed the Franchise Cloud Solutions SMS Management option, you can choose to notify franchisees by

- » email
- » SMS
- » SMS and email

SMS is an optional feature offered by Franchise Cloud Solutions. Check with your system administrator to see if your organization has licensed SMS Management.

To configure email and SMS notifications

1. Within the Franchise Profile Account, scroll down to Job Allocation Information.

All 👻	Q Search Accounts and more	★ 🖬 ? ಭ 🖡 🐻
Operations Manag Home Chatt	er Accounts V Contacts V Contrac	acts ∨ Management Logs ∨ Invoices ∨ Payments ∨ More♥ 🧳
FCS Ringwood		+ Follow Edit
✓ Payment Method Information		
Cash 🗊	Bank Account Name 🚯	
Cheque 🕚	Bank Account BSB 🕕	
Credit Card 🚺	Bank Account Number 🕕	
Direct Deposit ①	Paypal 🕦	
Eftpos 🚯	Paypal Email 🕕	1
\checkmark Job Allocation Information		
No Timeout	Max Travel Distance 10	/
Unavailable	Unavailable From	2
Off System	Unavailable To	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·
Notification Preference Email	Unavailable Redirect	
Notification Contact Ringwood Franchisee	Territory Only	
Notification SMS 0404 808 949	Territory Only Start Date	
	Territory Only End Date	

Notification Preference controls whether the job offer is sent by email, SMS or both.

2. Select the appropriate option from Notification Preference.

FCS Ringwood	+ Follow
✓ Job Allocation Information	
No Timeout	Max Travel Distance
	10
Unavailable	Unavailable From
	
Off System	Unavailable To
Notification Preference	Unavailable Redirect
Email	Search Accounts Q
None	Territory Only
1-Way SMS	
2-Way SMS	
✔ Fmail	Territory Only Start Date
1-Way SMS & Email	E
2.Way SMS & Email	Territory Only End Date

3. If your organization has licensed SMS Management, enter the appropriate mobile phone number into Notification SMS.

Now we need to set the correct notification email.

4. Select the desired Notification Contact then press Save.

Operations Manag Home Chatter Accounts Contacts Management Logs Invoices Payments Max FCS Ringwood Image: Contacts Image: C	All 💌	Q Search Accounts and more		★ - 🖪 ? 🌣 单 🐻
FCS Ringwood Job Allocation Information No Tirneout I0 Unavailable Unavailable From Off System Unavailable Rodirect Search Accounts Vnavailable Redirect Search Accounts Territory Only	tions Manag Home Cha	ter Accounts V Contacts V Contracts	\checkmark Management Logs \checkmark	Invoices 🗸 Payments 🗸 More 🕷 🖋
✓ Job Allocation Information No Timeout Max Travel Distance 10 Unavailable Unavailable From Off System Unavailable To Notification Preference Unavailable Redirect 2:Way SMS & Email Unavailable Redirect Notification Contact Territory Only	ingwood 📠			+ Follow Edit
No Timeout Max Travel Distance 10 Unavailable Unavailable From Image: Stream of the	llocation Information			
Inavailable Unavailable From Imavailable From Imava	t	Max Travel Distance	16 AC	
Unavailable Unavailable From Off System Unavailable To Off System Unavailable Redirect Sway SMS & Email Search Accounts Notification Contact Territory Only Ringwood Image: Search Accounts		10		
Image: Constraint of the second of the s	,	Unavailable From		
Off System Unavailable To Environment of System Unavailable To Environment of System Env			苗	
Notification Preference 2-Way SMS & Email Territory Only		Unavailable To		
Notification Preference Unavailable Redirect 2-Way SMS & Email Search Accounts Notification Contact Territory Only Ringwood Image: Contact			iii iii iii iii iii iii iii iii iii ii	
2-Way SMS & Email Search Accounts Q Notification Contact Friitory Only Ringwood O	Preference	Unavailable Redirect		
Notification Contact	MS & Email	Search Accounts	Q	
Ringwood	1 Contact	Territory Only		
	bd			
Q "Ringwood" in Contacts	Ringwood" in Contacts	* Territory Only Start Date		
Ringwood Franchisee	ingwood Franchisee			
FCS Ringwood Territory Only End Date	CS Ringwood	Territory Only End Date		
+ New Contact	ew Contact			

5. Click the Notification Contact link and check that the Contact Email is correct.

•-®	All 🔻 🔍	Search Salesforce		*• 🖪 ? 🌣 뵺 🐻
Operations Manag	Home Chatter	Accounts V Contacts V Co	ontracts 🗸 Managemen	t Logs 🗸 Invoices 🗸 Payments 🗸 More 🕷 🖋
Contact Mr. Ringwo	+ Follow Edit	Change Record Type Delete	View Contact Hierarchy	Clone Change Owner Enable Customer User
Title Account Name FCS Ringwood	Phone (2) ▼ 0404 303 808	Email hello@ringwood.fcs.com	Contact Owner	e
Details Related				Activity Chatter
Contact Owner		Phone 0404 303 808	1	Email
Name Mr. Ringwood Franchisee Account Name		Home Phone Mobile		Write an email Compose
FCS Ringwood Title		0404 808 949 Other Phone		Filters: All time • All activities • All types
Department		Fax		Next Steps ····· More Steps
Birthdate		Email hello@ringwood.fcs.com Assistant	1	No next steps. To get things moving, add a task or set up a meeting.
Reports to		Assistant	1	Past Activities

Understanding Job Allocation

Configuration potential within the job allocation system	121
Duplicate job checking rules	121
Job eligibility rules	122
Distance calculation options	122
Exclusiveness of territory	122
Parallel vs. sequential job offers	123
Queuing job offers	123
Throttling job offers	123
Ranking rules	124
Regional and isolated territories	124
Job allocation process	125
Introduction	125
How it works	125
Step-by-step	126
Geolocation	126
Territory matching	127
Duplicate matching	127

	Job Potential Generation	127
	Job Potential Eligibility & Ranking	.130
	Job Offer Sequencing	. 131
	Job offers	132
J	ob Statuses	. 136

Configuration potential within the job allocation system



When licensed, Job Allocation is configured especially for your business by our highly trained consultants.

Do not make changes without adequate training. The description that follows is provided to assist you to:

- » understand particular job allocation outcomes
- appraise you of alternative ways in which the Job Allocation Engine could work for you
- * enable you to communicate with Franchise Cloud Solutions consultants regarding your needs

Job Allocation provides an automated rules-based method for distributing jobs that originate with the franchisor website or call center to franchisees. How a job is distributed is highly dependent on the interaction of:

- » job type
- » job location
- » recent daily and weekly volume of job opportunities for each franchisee
- » target volume of daily and weekly job opportunities for each franchisee
- » availability of the franchisee

Check your site implementation notes to understand how your system has been configured.

The following description outlines how the Job Allocation System can be configured for your business.

Duplicate job checking rules

Duplicate jobs can arise through

- » inadvertent multiple submissions of the website form
- » job requests being received by the website and by the call center
- » multiple members of a household or business reporting a job request

In each of these cases, the first job request enters the Job Allocation system. Subsequent jobs are automatically matched via a configured rule set. The system flags all duplicates that match the rule set. Manual review of these duplicates is highly recommended.

- A typical example of a rule set is
 - » If Last Name and Suburb match, OR
 - » If Email matches, OR
 - » If Mobile matches
 - » Within the last 72 hours

Job Allocation can be configured by

- » customizing the duplicate rule set
- » adjusting the look-back time period in which the rule set is applied

Job eligibility rules

Franchisees are evaluated according to job eligibility criteria. Job eligibility criteria provide a yes or no choice as to whether a franchisee can be offered the job.

- A typical example of job eligibility rule set
 - » Franchisee is active
 - » Franchise is available
 - » Franchisee will accept jobs outside own territory

Job eligibility criteria can be specialized to work differently inside and outside their own territory. The number and order of rules being processed can be changed.

Distance calculation options

Distance can be calculated between the franchisee address and the job address by

- » Straight line (as the crow flies), or
- » By road

The distance of all potential franchisees to the job is calculated using the configured method.

Exclusiveness of territory

There can be a trade-off between providing a franchisee exclusivity in a territory and providing customers timely service. Job Allocation can support a range of levels of exclusiveness vs. service.

For jobs that originate from the territory owned by the franchisee

- » At its most exclusive
 - » always be allocated the territory owner
 - » be made never to timeout
 - » provide owned area job offers to a franchise on a 24/7 basis
- » At its least exclusive
 - offer all reasonable franchisees the job offer simultaneously with the job being allocated to the first to respond
- » Mid-way between these two are policies that
 - » offer a job to the territory owner first (if eligible)
 - » allow the territory owner to accept, reject or ignore the offer
 - » when rejected or expired, offer to next most suitable franchisee

These policies are also affected by job queuing and job throttling controls.

Parallel vs. sequential job offers

Following a first attempt to offer a job to a territory owner, subsequent offers can be distributed sequentially or in parallel.

- Sequential job offers are distributed one at a time to the next highest ranked franchise first, and offered to each subsequent franchise if rejected or the job offer times out.
- Parallel job offers are distributed simultaneously, with the first franchise to respond being awarded the job.

Queuing job offers

Job offers can be limited to one-at-a-time, i.e. the franchisee must respond to the current job offer prior to being sent another.

When the one-at-a-time policy is in force, subsequent job offers can either

- » be immediately sent to the next-best franchisee
- » be queued until the current job offer has been accepted, rejected or a timeout reached

Throttling job offers

Job offers can also be throttled through the provision of daily and weekly job offer targets. These targets are set on individual franchises. Ranking rules can preference those franchises who are furthest from achieving their targeted volume of job offers.

Ranking rules

Ranking rules are used only in sequential mode. Ranking rules determine the order in which job offers are made to franchisees. Ranking is calculated at the point of distributing the job offer to the next highest franchise.

- A typical example of a ranking rule set
 - » Daily target is not yet reached (order by true first), then
- » Weekly offer variance (order by greatest first), then
- » Daily offer variance (order by greatest first), then
- » Distance (order by least distance first)

Ranking rules can be specialized to operate differently for in-territory and out-of-territory jobs.

Regional and isolated territories

It is possible to override the normal job offer distribution rules on a territory-by-territory basis for territories that are regional or have no alternative franchisees nearby. These overrides are controlled on a franchisee's Franchise Profile Account.

Job allocation process

Introduction

Job Allocation System is a rules-based system to efficiently allocate in-bound job requests across a franchise network. The system successfully automates the vast majority of inbound job requests, speeding the allocation of jobs to franchises while reducing the effort required to do so. Exceptional cases require manual management and intervention.

This chapter describes:

- » How the Job Allocation System works
- >> How the Job Allocation System can be configured (or, reconfigured)

To learn how to provide on-going management of and intervention in exceptional cases, *See* "Managing Job Allocation" on page 143.

How it works

The function of the Job Allocation System is to translate the Job Address to a Territory Location.

FRANCHISE CLOUD SOLUTIONS	All • Q Search Salesforce	** 🖬 ? 🌣 🖡 🖱
Business Manage Home Chatter Accounts V Jobs V Job Offers	✓ Job Schedule Invoices ✓ Payments ✓ Customer Feedback ✓ Contacts ✓	✓ Material Price Lists ∨ Files ∨ Reports ∨ Dashboards ∨ More ▼
SIN-00401	+ Follow Match Customer Plan	Job Quote Job Schedule Job Invoice Job Supplier Invoice Credit Job Edit
✓ Job Contact Information		Past Activities
Salutation	Street 22 Swanson Way	No past activity. Past meetings and tasks marked as done show up here.
First Name Luke	Suburb Claymore	
Last Name Dardanelles	Postcode 2559 /	
Company	Country Australia	
Email Iorynj@gmail.com Mohile	Sate W	
0404888444	View Google Map	
Other Phone 0404888444	Geo-code Accuracy ROOFTOP	
Job Description		29
More Information	Terriflery and Log	~~ Allon Information
> Financial Information		
> Quote Information		
> Invoice Information		
Job Source & Marketing Information		
> Financial Analysis		
 Territory & Location Information 		
Territory Territory - Claymore	Territory Franchisee FCS - Claymore	
Territory Status Owned	Location -34.04626289999999 , 150.8061899	

The Job Allocation System then uses a defined set of rules to identify a list of Job Potentials—sorted according to defined criteria—to determine the order in which the job will be offered to franchisees.

Job Potentials (6+)				
JOB POTENTIAL: JOB POTENTIAL NU	ACCOUNT NAME	EXCLUSION REASON	OFFERED	
JPN-00797	FCS - Narellan Vale	Potential is on Territory Only		•
JPN-00799	FCS Maroubra	Potential Franchisee is not active		•
JPN-00794	FCS - Bexley		×	•
JPN-00793	FCS - Kingsgrove			•
JPN-00796	FCS - Sans Souci			•
JPN-00798	FCS - Campsie			•

Job offers are then made to franchisees. Using the configured rule set in conjunction with the responses of franchisees, allocation to a franchisee is then made.

Manual monitoring is required to deal with the exceptional cases that fail to enter job allocation or fail to allocate to a particular franchisee. For information about manual oversight of job allocation, *See* "Managing Job Allocation" on page 143.

Step-by-step

The Job Allocation System operates on a **Job** and one or more **Job Offers**. Each step in the process is identified by whether it affects the **Job** or the **Job Offer**(s).



Read each of the topics below to understand how the Job Allocation System functions.

Geolocation

Geolocation takes the address information provided by the customer and converts it to a spatial coordinate using the Google Maps API.

Territory matching

Territory allocation involves

- » determining which territory the geo-located job belongs to, or else
- » assigning the job to the Master Franchise Profile Account's Job Allocation Queue.

Identifying the territory the job is assigned to is the first step of the Job Allocation System. If the Job Allocation System cannot match the job to a territory, it passes the job through to the Job Allocation Queue for manual processing.

It is important to create **Territories** and **Territory Locations** covering all job addresses. If a job address does not match any given **Territory Location** owned by an active **Territory** belonging to the Master Franchise Profile Account then job allocation will not create job potentials and therefore will not allocate jobs to franchisees.

Duplicate matching

Duplicate matching involves the comparison of fields to identify potential duplicates. Jobs matching the duplicate check criteria are assigned a Substatus of *On Hold*.

Job Potential Generation

The Job Allocation System generates a list of potential franchises to whom the job could be offered. This list is created by drawing a box around each Franchise Profile Account's Travel Distance Origin. The box side-length is given by Max Travel Distance.

When the job location exists within the franchise's box, the franchise is added to the list of Job Potentials.

Being added to the list of Job Potentials does not mean the Job Allocation System will make a job offer. It does mean that the franchise is further assessed to determine whether or not it will be granted a job offer.

So, Job Potentials represents the full listing of all franchises whose served areas encompass the job location when assessed by examining Max Travel Distance using latitude and longitude.

A Job Potential record is generated for each franchise under consideration.

Determining distance

The latitude and longitude distance assessment used to generate the list of Job Potentials is the first-pass in determining distance. Further assessments of distance is also included.

Distance is also assessed using either of the following two methods:

- » Straight Line, or
- » By road

Both methods are determined through calls to Google Maps, but they can return different results.

The straight line method calculates a straight-line distance between the franchise's Travel Distance Origin and the job's Location.



Some jobs fall within the box calculation but fall outside the straight line calculation.

The by road method returns the distance between the franchise's Travel Distance Origin and the job's Location when calculated by the most direct route by road.



By road will always be further than the straight-line distance. Fewer job potentials will be returned (compared with the straight line method) for any given travel distance.

Operations Management User Guide

Tip 1: Why some franchisees are excluded by max travel distance criteria

The fact that a franchise is listed among the Job Potentials shows that it is within the box calculation (determined by latitude and longitude). However, their distance may still be assessed as being outside their Max Travel Distance. Here's how it can happen.

Consider the initial box calculation. The Travel Distance Origin is given by the star.

- When the job is located outside the box (e.g. the blue triangle) the franchise is not listed as a Job Potential.
- When the job is located within the box the franchise is included as a Job Potential.
- When the system is configured to use straight line distance calculation, then any job falling outside the circle will be excluded as being beyond max travel distance (e.g. red diamond).



When the system is configured to use the "by road" distance method, then the principles described above will still hold, but the "circle" will be geographically "distorted" based on road distance.



Job Potential Eligibility & Ranking

Eligibility

Eligibility processing involves applying eligibility criteria against each Job Potential record. When a Job Potential is found to fail a criteria, the Job Potential is excluded from further consideration. Ineligibility results in an Exclusion Reason being recorded on the Job Potential record.

Built-in eligibility criteria

Some eligibility requirements are built into Operations Management. The two major builtin eligibility criteria are

- » Distance
- » Job Type

Job Type eligibility can be set to one of three values.

- » Off prevents job types being used to assess the eligibility of a particular Job Potential.
- Any includes a Job Potential when there is a match between any of the Job Types included on the Job Request and the Job Types recorded against a Franchise Profile Account.

All excludes a Job Potential unless the Franchise Profile Account includes all the Job Types listed on the Job Request.

• - ®	All 🔻 Q Search Salesfe	orce			* -	🖬 ? X	Þ 🖡 🐻
•••• Operations Manag Ho	ime Chatter Accounts 🗸	Contacts 🗸	Contracts 🗸	Management Logs 🗸 🗸	* CN-00001 $\lor\times$	More 💌	Ň
E CN-00001					Edit	Delete C	Clone 🔻
✓ Job Allocation Settings							
Job Type Eligibility 🕕			Timeout Per Offer				
Off		•	15				
None			Timeout Per Job				
✓ Off			120				
Any			Customer Matching	g Criteria 🚯			
All							
							4

Dynamic eligibility criteria

Dynamic eligibility criteria are specified through system configuration. Dynamic eligibility allows for new criteria to be configured.

Ranking

Job Potential Ranking establishes the ordering of potential Job Offers when the Job Offer Processing policy is *Sequential*.

Job Offer Sequencing

Job Offer Sequencing involves the dispatch of Job Offers according to the configured policy within the implementation. Available policies are

- » Sequential, OR
- » Parallel

Sequential or parallel jobs offers determines what happens to a job once it has been determined that

- » the franchise territory owner cannot be offered the job
- » the franchise territory owner rejected the job, or
- » the job offer to the franchise territory owner timed out

Sequential Job Offers

With sequential offers, each non-territory franchise is made a job offer in turn (until one of the franchisees accepts the offer or the job time out is reached).

Parallel Job Offers

With parallel job offers, all non-territory franchise are offered the job simultaneously. The first franchise owner to accept the job becomes its owner.

Detailed refinements

If the system is able to offer the job to the territory owner, it will do so. If it is unable to offer the job to the territory owner, or the territory owner rejects the offer or it times out, then the job offer will be offered to other franchisees.

How the subsequent job offers are made depends on whether the offers are configured in sequence or parallel.

- » In parallel, the job is allocated to whichever franchise accepts the job offer first.
- In sequence, the job is offered to each franchise in turn until the job offer is accepted or the Job Time Out is reached. Job offers remain pending until they are accepted, declined or one of the timeout limits is reached.

Further configuration options adjust job allocation behavior.

Job offers

When a job is offered to a franchisee, the system creates a Job Offer record.

The **Job** record (where the outcomes of allocation processing has been recorded to this point) and the **Job Offer** record are two different types of records. There are often multiple **Job Offers** issued for each **Job** record.

Understanding the behavior of the Job Allocation System (JAS) during an allocation process now requires attending to both the **Job** record and any **Job Offer** records that have been issued.

Queued

Some job offers are placed in a Status of *Queued*. While the Job Offer is *Queued*, it has not been sent to the franchisee.

A Job Offer may be *Queued* for one of two reasons:

 The Job is in a Territory owned by the franchisee and there is an existing Job Offer that is *Pending*. (This can only happen when the One Offer At A Time and Queue In Territory Offers options are selected within the Master Franchise Configuration Set.) 2. The Job is in a Territory owned by the franchisee and the Job Offer was created outside of Franchise's Business Hours. (This can only happen when the Offer Inside Contact Hours Only and Queue In Territory Offers options are selected within the Master Franchise Configuration Set.)

You can tell at a glance which of the two reasons a Job Offer is queued. If the Scheduled Offer Time field is populated, the Job Offer is queued because it is outside Business Hours. If the field is blank instead, it is queued due to an already-pending offer.)

Pending

A Job Offer whose Status is Pending will typically be notified to the franchisee. The franchisee may receive the notification and respond via one of the following channels:

- Salesforce web interface. The franchisee can see Job Offers within the Business Management app within Salesforce. When a Job Offer is Pending, the franchisee may accept Job Offers within Salesforce.
- Salesforce mobile interface. The franchisee can see Job Offers within the Salesforce mobile interface. When a Job Offer is Pending, the franchisee may accept Job Offers within Salesforce mobile.
- Email. The franchisee may be configured to receive emails notifying them of new job offers. The franchisee can accept or reject job offers by responding to the email.
- SMS. The franchisee may be configured to receive SMS notifying them of new job offers. The franchisee can accept or reject job offers by replying to the SMS using the code within the SMS.

Configuring Job Offer Notifications

To configure Email or SMS Notifications, *See* "How to configure a franchise profile for job allocation" on page 103.

SMS an optional component

SMS is an optional component that may be licensed for your implementation. Check with your system administrator to determine whether or not SMS has been licensed for your implementation.

Accepted or Rejected

When the Status is Accepted, the Job is allocated to the first franchisee to Accept it.

Sometimes franchisees accept a Job Offer after the Offer Time Out. In this case, the Status on the Job Offer won't be accepted: it will be *Expired*.

When the Status is *Rejected*, the job will be offered to the next-highest ranked franchise (in Sequential processing), or, if there are no other Job Potentials, the Job will be placed in the Job Offer Queue by becoming the Job's Owner.

Expired

When the current time reaches the Offer Time Out value without a response from the franchisee, the Job Offer is set to a Status of *Expired*. Job Offers that are *Expired* can no longer be accepted or rejected by the franchisee.



If Job Time Out is blank, it is because the No Timeout in Owned Area option is set in the Master Franchise Configuration Set.

When an Offer Time Out is evaluated, if the current time has reached or exceeded the Job Time Out, no further franchisees will be offered the job, even if there are more Job Potentials listed on the Job.

If there is no Offer Time Out (e.g. the No Timeout In Owned Area option is selected in the Master Franchise Configuration Set) the Job Time Out value is not evaluated.

Using job offers in Salesforce

When a franchisee logs into Salesforce, they can review any Job Offers that have been extended to them. When they are viewing a Job Offer with a Status of *Pending*, they can *Accept* or *Reject* it.

A franchisee may choose to log into Salesforce, choose the Job Offers tab, and then view the Job Offers Today list view. The franchisee will then see all Job Offers that have been offered today.

Using job offers in Salesforce Mobile

When a franchisee logs into Salesforce's mobile app, they can review any Job Offers that have been extended to them. When they are viewing a Job Offer with a Status of *Pending*, they can *Accept* or *Reject* it.

A franchisee may choose to log into Salesforce mobile, tap the **Menu** and select the **Job Offers** item. They can then view the **All Job Offers Today** list.

Receiving job offers by email notification

An Email Notification is sent to a franchisee if their Franchise Profile Account is configured to allow Email Notifications to be sent.

An Email Notification is not the Job Offer. An Email Notification is an optional service that alerts a franchisee that a Job Offer is pending, and can receive an *Accept* or *Reject* response if the response is given within period before the Job Offer's Offer Time Out is reached.

Receiving job offers by SMS notification

SMS is an optional feature offered by Franchise Cloud Solutions. Check with your system administrator to see if your organization has licensed SMS Management.

An SMS Notification is sent to a franchisee if their Franchise Profile Account is configured to allow SMS Notifications to be sent.



An SMS Notification is not the **Job Offer**. An SMS Notification is an optional service that alerts a franchisee that a Job Offer is pending, and can receive an *Accept* or *Reject* response if the response is given within period before the **Job Offer**'s Offer Time Out is reached.

Job Statuses

Job Statuses provide a convenient way to keep track of the status of each job. The pathway near the top of the Job Details page provides a visual indicator of the current status of the job.

Unassigned Assigned Contact Planning Work Invoice Closed

Automatic and manual Job Statuses

By managing jobs through each status, Operations Management helps you focus on delighting your customers and growing your business.

Many Job Statuses are set automatically.

For example, creating a Job Plan automatically places the Job's Status into *Planning*.

Other Job Statuses allow you to manually set the Status or the Substatus fields.

For example, if you have Contacted the customer, you need to record the outcome of the contact using the Substatus fields. It allows you to describe whether the contact was Attempted, Successful, On Hold, or whether there is a Pending or Completed Site Visit.

Guidance for success

You can discover what actions and activities are related to each status by toggling the **Show more** button on the status pathway.



When toggled, you can see the Key Fields and Guidance for Success pane.

\sim	Assigned	Contact	Planning	Work	Invoice	Closed	✓ Mark Status as Complete	
Guidance for Success Make contact with the customer to further understand the details of the job request and once contacted, update the job status to 'Contact'. Link the job to a customer account record.								

It can be helpful to check **Guidance for Success** to prompt what needs to be done at each status.

Job status summary

The top-level Job Statuses are described below.
Job Status	Description
Unassigned	A newly-created job before it is assigned to a franchise.
Assigned	A job newly-assigned to a franchise before any attempt to contact the customer has occurred.
Contact	All customer contacts (including attempted contacts) and necessary site visits.
Planning	Determine the tasks, costs and personnel required to complete the job. Schedule the personnel. If a quote is required, generate the quote. Cus- tomer accepts the quote.
Work	Work is ready to be scheduled, has commenced, is in progress or is completed.
Invoice	At least one invoice has been generated. Customer has made pay- ments on the invoice. Customer has fully paid the invoice, or the invoice is in dispute.
Closed	The job is complete and payments have been received. The job may automatically close when all invoices attached to the job are fully paid.

Job Substatuses are described below.

Job Status	Substatus	Transition	Description		
			Job is newly created and has not yet been assigned to a Franchisee.		
	None	Auto	This status is now obsol- escent. Queued for Allocation is used in its place.		
Unassigned	Queued for Allocation	Auto	Job is newly created and is awaiting allocation to a Franchisee.		
	In Allocation	Auto	Job is being managed by the Job Allocation System, wait- ing to be allocated.		
	On Hold	Manual	Job has been placed on hold by the Job Allocation system due to inability to assign to a Franchisee. Requires manual intervention in order for it to be assigned to a franchisee.		
Assistant	None	Auto	Job has been assigned to a franchisee. Franchisee is yet to make contact with the customer.		
Assigned	Manually Allocated	Auto	Job has been force allocated to a Franchisee. Franchisee is yet to make contact with the customer.		

Job Status	Substatus	Transition	Description
	Attempted	Manual	Franchisee has attempted contact (called, sent text or email) without yet making con- tact.
	Successful	Manual	Franchisee has made contact with the customer.
	Site Visit Pending	Auto	Franchisee has scheduled a site visit. Good practice is to ensure the site visit is recorded within the Job Calendar.
Contact	Site Visit Completed	Manual	Franchisee has visited the site.
Contact			The Job has been temporarily placed on hold for a range of reasons that prevent it pro- ceeding.
	On Hold	Manual	may be out of town or oth- erwise unresponsive to con- tacts.
			(When it is clear the Job will never proceed, change status to Closed: Not Proceeding.)

Job Status	Substatus	Transition	Description
	In Progress	Auto	Job Planning causes trans- ition. When you begin Job Planning, the system will auto- matically progress to this Sub- status.
	Completed	Manual	Switch to this Substatus when you have completed the Job Planning process.
Planning	Quote Sent	Auto	Quote Job, Email Send causes transition. When you have sent the Quote, system will switch to this Substatus.
	Quote Accep- ted	Manual	When customer indicates acceptance of quote, manu- ally set to this Substatus.
	On Hold	Manual	When circumstances arise that prevent you from pro- ceeding with Job Planning (e.g. customer unable to provide sufficient information) place it On Hold.

Job Status	Substatus	Transition	Description
	Pending	Manual	Indicates work is being delayed. Reasons include: » Waiting for a deposit » Waiting on material or a sig- nature Selecting a Substatus Reason is mandatory.
			Work is scheduled.
Work	Scheduled	Conditional	Automatic transition occurs if the Estimated Hours match Scheduled Hours with 1 hour of vari- ance. Other- wise manual.
	In Progress	Manual	A user has clocked onto the job (from Job Calendar Mobile).
	Completed	Manual	A user has marked the job complete (from Job Calendar Mobile).
	On Hold	Manual	Work cannot proceed due to factors outside your control (e.g. waiting on other trades, customer denies access to work site, etc.)

Job Status	Substatus	Transition	Description
	In Progress	Auto	Invoice is generated causes transition. You have gen- erated the invoice.
			Customer has paid the invoice.
Invoice	Completed	Manual	This status not used when Franchise Profile Account's Auto Close Job on Final Payment is checked.
	Dispute	Manual	Customer is disputing the invoice.
Closed	Completed	Auto	Invoice is paid and the Franchise Profile Account's Auto Close Job on Final Payment is checked causes transition. All work is com- plete and invoice has been paid in full.
	Not Pro- ceeding	Manual	Job will not proceed and is not being followed up.

All Sub Statuses having Auto transitions can also be placed in that Sub Status manually.

You can prevent automatic transitions from occurring by checking the Manual Status Update checkbox. This is extremely useful when you are part invoicing a job while work is still progressing. By checking Manual Status Update you can retain the status of Work-In Progress despite having put through a part invoice. S 1

Managing Job Allocation

Job allocation management	144
Exception monitoring	144
How to take action	144
How to check for unassigned jobs	145
How to check for duplicate jobs	147
How to check for unallocated jobs	149
What to do when the job address is not recognized	151
How to restart job allocation	154
How to force allocate a job	158
How to manually allocate a job	161
How to manually close a job	165
Troubleshooting job allocation	166
Allocation process	166
Status: Unassigned	167
A franchisee is not receiving job offers	170
No franchisees are receiving job offers via SMS	171
SMS was received but no email	171
Email was received but no SMS	171
A job is allocated but no offer was received by the franchisee	172
A job was allocated to the wrong franchisee	172

Job allocation management

The Job Allocation System allocates most jobs to franchisees with no head office intervention. A small number of jobs will still require manual intervention in order to allocate them. At least one person at head office will need to dedicate part of their day to monitoring the job allocation process to deal with the jobs requiring manual intervention.

Exception monitoring

Exception monitoring involves checking for jobs that have either not entered Job Allocation, or those that have passed through Job Allocation without being allocated. You can check for each condition by regularly checking three reports:

- > Jobs that have not entered job allocation remain unassigned. They can be found using an Aged Jobs report. For details, See "How to check for unassigned jobs" on the facing page.
- > Jobs that were deemed to be duplicates of another job are not automatically allocated. To monitor for duplicates, See "How to check for duplicate jobs" on page 147.
- Jobs that have passed through job allocation without being allocated become owned by the Job Allocation Queue. To monitor for these jobs, See "How to check for unallocated jobs" on page 149.

The most common reasons for jobs needing manual intervention are:

- >>> The job address is misspelled or otherwise incorrect in some way.
- The job address is correct, but Google cannot identify which of two addresses is correct (e.g. 199 Burrendah Blvd vs 1/99 Burrendah Blvd).
- » The job appears to be a duplicate of another recent job.
- » No franchisee accepted the job offer within the job timeout.

In each of these cases, manual intervention is a normal business process (i.e. it is not an error).

Sometimes, misconfigured data can prevent job allocation. To help identify when this occurs, *See* "Troubleshooting job allocation" on page 166.

How to take action

Once you've identified jobs that are unassigned, duplicate or owned by the job allocation queue, you take action using the topics outlined in this chapter.

How to check for unassigned jobs

The job allocation process handles the vast majority of jobs automatically. No matter how good the configuration, there are always likely to be some jobs that require manual intervention. You can check for jobs requiring manual intervention by consulting the list of jobs still unassigned after a certain period of time.

You will need to identify the period after which you will choose to begin monitoring and potentially intervening.

To check for unassigned jobs

1. From the Salesforce **Jobs** menu, look for a list view named **Aged Jobs**.

8				Q Sea	rch Jobs and r	more			1				? 🖡 🤇
	Operations Manag	Home	Chatter	Accounts 🗸	Contacts	~	Contracts 🗸	Manageme	ent Log	s 🗸 Invoices 🗸	Jobs 🗸	More 🔻	
∞ ¦	Recently Viewed	-		-2			•						New
items	LIST VIEWS						ਲ				ŵ -		Ø 7
	Aged Jobs						ANCI	ISE	\sim	STATUS	✓ TEF	RITORY	~
1	All Jobs									Unassigned			
2	All Jobs with Line Items									Unassigned	Ter	itory - Adelaid	e 💌
3	Master Job Queue						S Bor	di Beach		Assigned	Ter	itory (D) - Bon	di B 💌
¥.	Recently Viewed									Unassigned	Ter	itory - Hornsby	/ 🔍
5					y 1055		e Res	ue Balmain		Work	Ter	itory - Balmair	n 💌
~	IN-00155									Unassigned			

It is possible you don't have an **Aged Jobs** list view.

- 2. If you find the **Aged Jobs** list view, select it. You will need to examine jobs in on this list to see whether they are actually duplicates.
- 3. If you do not find the Aged Jobs list view, you will need to create it.

To create the Aged Jobs list view

1. Follow the instructions for creating a custom list view. *See* "How to create your own list view" on page 18.

2. When choosing the filters for the list view, make them *Show All Jobs* where Created Date not equal to *LAST 1 DAYS* and Status equals *Unassigned*.

•-®				୍ Search Jo	bs and more				★ - 日 ?	\$. S
***	Operations Manag	Home	Chatter	Accounts 🗸	Contacts 🗸	Contracts 🗸	Management Logs	✓ Invoice	es 🗸 Jobs 🗸 More 🔻	1
39 iter	Jobs Aged Jobs -	 Filtered by Status, 	Created Date •	Updated 38 minu	ites ago				\$\$ ▼ Ⅲ ▼ C	New
	JOB NU 🕇 🗸	SUBURB 🗸	TERRITORY	✓ TERRITOR	🗸 STATUS	V SUB STA	AT ∨ SUB-STAT	~	Filters	\rightarrow
1	JN-00001	Sydney			Unassigne	ed		•		0
2	JN-00003	Sydney			Unassigne	ed		•	Character and	
3	JN-00017	Sydney			Unassigne	ed		•	All jobs	
4	JN-00022	Randwick	Territory (Unowned	Unassigne	ed				
5	JN-00023	randwick			Unassigne	ed.		•	Matching all of these filters	
6	JN-00024	randwick			Unassigne	ed		•	Created Date	×
7	JN-00025	Randwick			Unassigne	d			not equal to LAST 1 DAYS	
8	JN-00026	Randwick			Unassigne	ed		•		
9	JN-00027	Randwick			Unassigne	ed			Status equals Unassigned	×
10	JN-00028	Randwick			Unassigne	ed		•		
11	JN-00031	Randwick	Territory (Unowned	Unassigne	ed			Add Filter	Remove All
12	JN-00036	Birchgrove	Territory	Owned	Unassigne	ed			Add Filter Logic	

- 3. Add columns that you find useful. See "How to add columns to a list view" on page 21.
- 4. Share this list view so that everyone in your organization can see it. *See* "How to share list views" on page 24.

To deal with aged jobs

Aged jobs require manual intervention. You may need to check with the customer and/or franchisee to determine whether the customer is still asking for the job or whether a franchisee can be found to accept the job.

- 1. When you do find a franchisee willing to take the job, you will need to manually allocate the job to the franchisee. *See* "How to manually allocate a job" on page 161.
- 2. When you are unable to find a franchisee to take the job or if the customer is no longer asking for the job to be done, you will need to close the job. *See* "How to manually close a job" on page 165.

How to check for duplicate jobs

From time to time customers raise duplicate jobs within the system. The Job Allocation system checks for duplicate jobs. What counts as a duplicate job is configurable.

When a job fails a duplicate job check, the Job's Substatus field is set to On Hold. Jobs with the On Hold Substatus require a manual check to see whether the job is actually a duplicate.

To check for duplicate jobs in the system

1. From the Salesforce Jobs menu, look for a list view named Jobs On Hold.



It is possible you don't have a Jobs On Hold list view.

- 2. If you find the **Jobs On Hold** list view, select it. You will need to examine jobs in on this list to see whether they are duplicate jobs.
- 3. If you do not find the Jobs On Hold list view, you will need to create it.

To create the Jobs On Hold list view

1. Follow the instructions for creating a custom list view. *See* "How to create your own list view" on page 18.

2. When choosing filters for the list view, make them Show All Jobs where Substatus equals On Hold.

Operations Manag Home Chatter	Q Search Jobs and more Accounts ✓ Contacts ✓ C	Contracts 🗸 Management Logs	✓ Invoi	ices V Jobs V		
Jobs Jobs On Hold V 0 Items • Sorted by Job Number • Filtered by Sub Status • Update	d a minute ago			¢ •		New C
JOB NUMBER 🕇			~	Filters		\rightarrow
	No items to display.			Show me All jobs Matching all of t Sub Status equals On Ho	hese filters old	×
				Add Filter Add Filter Logic		Remove All

- 3. Add columns that you find useful. *See* "How to add columns to a list view" on page 21.
- 4. Share this list view so that everyone in your organization can see it. *See* "How to share list views" on page 24.

To deal with jobs flagged as duplicate

- 1. If a job is a duplicate, you may need to manually close the job. *See* "How to manually close a job" on page 165.
- 2. If a job is flagged as a duplicate because of spurious data (e.g. a regularly-used fake email address), amend the data and then restart the allocation process. *See* "How to restart job allocation" on page 154.
- 3. If you find a job is not a duplicate, you will need to manually allocate the job. *See* "How to manually allocate a job" on page 161.

How to check for unallocated jobs

Jobs that cannot be allocated are assigned to your organization's Job Allocation Queue.

Each Master Franchise Profile Account has its own Job Allocation Queue. This is configured within the Master Franchise Profile Account's Configuration record. Check with your system administrator if you are not sure of your organization's Job Allocation Queue Name.



In the procedure below, the system administrator has confirmed that the Job Allocation Queue Name is *Master Job Queue*.

To check for jobs assigned to the Job Allocation Queue

1. From the Salesforce Jobs menu, select the list view that matches your Master Franchise Profile Account's Job Allocation Queue Name.

• - ®			Q Search Jo	obs and more			¢	0	* -	8	? 🅸	Ļ.	6
***	Operations Manag	Home Chatter	Accounts 🗸	Contacts 🗸	Contracts	✓ Managemei	nt Log	s 🗸 Invoices 🗸	Jobs 🗸	• More	٣		ALCON T
	Recently Viewed		2									Nev	N
5 item	LIST VIEWS								\$.	I • C		C	Y
	All Jobs		.			ANCHISE	\sim	STATUS	V TERRIT	ORY		\sim	
1	All Jobs with Line Items					S Bondi		Closed					•
2	Master Job Queue					S Bondi Beach		Assigned	Territor	y (D) - Bo	ondi B		•
3	 Recently Viewed 					S Bondi Beach		Closed					•
4	JN-00203							Unassigned					•
5	JN-00193	Smith - Tiling	Stev	e Smith	Tile	e Rescue Lilydale		Invoice	Territo	y - Lilyda	le		•

To deal with jobs assigned to the Job Allocation Queue

Jobs on this list require manual intervention. The interventions may consist of

- Editing the job address. See "What to do when the job address is not recognized" on page 151.
- » Restarting job allocation. See "How to restart job allocation" on page 154.
- » Force allocating the job. See "How to force allocate a job" on page 158.
- » Manually allocating the job. See "How to manually allocate a job" on page 161.
- » Manually closing the job. See "How to manually close a job" on page 165.

Why jobs have been assigned to the Job Allocation Queue

Jobs owned by the Job Allocation Queue were not able to be allocated automatically. They are placed in the Job Allocation Queue for manual review and intervention. Reasons for being placed in this queue may include

- The job was offered to one or more franchisees, but no franchisee accepted the job and the Job Timeout has been reached.
- The level of geocoding for the job address may not reach the minimum required levels for job allocation.
 - Addresses can be geocoded at different levels of accuracy. It is possible that the given job address was not able to be geocoded to the level of accuracy required by either the Franchise Profile Account's Geo-code Accuracy or the Master Franchise Profile Account's Configuration record's Geo-coding Minimum Level.
- » One or more Franchise Profile Accounts may be misconfigured.
 - " The Franchise Profile Account may not be *Active* or its Contract not *Activated*.
 - [»] The Franchise Profile Account's **Business Hours** may be missing or misconfigured.
 - The Franchise Profile Account may be set to Territory only, when the Job Address lies outside the owned territory.
 - > The Job Address may be outside the Max Travel Distance from the Travel Distance Origin, or either field may not be set.
- The job address may not be inside any Territory associated with the Master Franchise Profile Account.

What to do when the job address is not recognized

An incorrect job address may prevent the job from entering the job allocation process. Typically an incorrect job address will be geocoded to a standard insufficient to meet your organization's configured minimum geolocation level.

For example, when the geocoding minimum requirement is set to *ROOFTOP*, then any job geocoded to a level of *RANGE_INTERPOLATED* will be placed on the organization's configured Job Allocation Queue.

คือ			All 🔻 🔍	Search Jobs and more			★ 🖬 ? ಭ 4
Operatio	ons Manag	Home	Chatter	Accounts 🗸 Contacts 🗸 C	Contracts 🗸	Managemen	nt Logs ∨ Invoices ∨ Jobs ∨ More▼
Job JN-001	02			+ Follow Edit Delete	Plan Job	Schedule .	Job Invoice Job Credit Job Match Custo
Job Name	Amount AUD 0.00	Street 13 Lisį	gold Street	Suburb Heathmont			
Unass	signed As	signed	Contact	Planning W	fork	Invoice	Closed V Mark Status as Com
Details	Related	Job Allo	cation Viev	/			Activity Chatter
Job Name 🚯				Franchise 🕕		1	Email
Job Number JN-00102				Owner Default Job Queue		2	Create new
Customer 🚯				Status 🕦 Unassigned		1	
Request Type				Sub Status			Filters: All time • All activities • All types Refresh Exp
Last Name 🕕 Northwood				Postcode			
Company 🚯				Country 📵 Australia		/	
Email 🕕				State VIC		/	
Mobile 🕕 0431661077				Map Job 🚯 View Google Map			
Other Phone 🕚				Geo-code Accuracy RANGE INTERPOLATED		/	

To remedy an incorrect or imprecise address

1. Edit the address.

เ ล	All 🔻	Q Search Jobs and more			*• 🖬 ? 🅸 🌲 🐻
Operations Manag Home	Chatter	Accounts \checkmark Contacts \checkmark Contracts \checkmark	Management Log	s 🗸 Invoices	∨ Jobs ∨ More▼
S JN-00102		+ Follow Edit Delete Plan Jo	b Schedule Job	Invoice Job	Credit Job Match Customer
✓ Job Contact Information					
Salutation (1)		Street 🚯	5		
None	•	9 Lisgoold Street			
First Name 🕕		*Suburb 🚺	9.e3W6		
Jemima		Heathmont			
Last Name 🚯		• Postcode 🕕			
Northwood		3135			
Company 🕕		*Country 🕕			
		Australia	•		
		View all dependencies			
		*State			
	Cancel	Save	· ·		

2. On amending the address, the job will re-enter the job allocation process.

In relatively rare cases, the corrected job address may still not be recognized by Google Maps. When that happens, do the following.

To remedy an address not recognized by Google Maps

- 1. Edit the address to a form recognized by Google (e.g. you might change 1/99 Burrendah Blvd to 99 Burrendah Blvd).
- 2. Save the change. The system will enter job allocation.
- 3. Edit the Job record again. Check Force Street Address and amend the street address back to its correct form (e.g. 1/99 Burrendah Blvd).

FRANCHISE CLOUD Solutions	Search		* • * * *
•••• Operations Manag Home Chatter Account	s 🗸 Contacts 🗸 Contracts 🗸 Management	Logs 🗸 Expenses 🗸 Invoices	i 🗸 Jobs 🗸 More 🔻 🥒
50 Job JN-00102	+ Follow Match Customer Plan Job	Schedule Job Invoice Job S	Supplier Invoice Credit Job Edit
arsigma Job Contact Information			
Salutation	Force Street Address 🚯	5	
None			
First Name	Street	5	
Greg	1/99 Burrendah Blvd		
Last Name	*Suburb		
Stimpson	Willeton		
Company	* Postcode		
	6155		
Email	* Country		
	Australia	•	
	View all dependencies		
Mobile	• State 🚯		
	WA	▼	
	View all dependencies		
Other Phone	Map Job		
	View Google Map		
	i nis țiela is calculatea upon save		
	ROOFTOP		
Job Description Cancel	Save		

How to restart job allocation

There may be a need to restart job allocation. For example, when a job is assigned but then needs to be re-allocated, it is possible to restart the job allocation process.

Sometimes a franchisee may initially accept a job offer but then later decline it. After making contact with the customer, the franchisee may discover they are unqualified to deliver the required service. After they decline the job, you may choose to restart the job allocation service in order to offer it to another franchisee.

	Decl	ine	
Status Declined	•	Comments Job requires electrical license.	li
		Cancel	Save

On restarting the job allocation process:

- » If no job potentials have been created, the system creates job potentials.
- If job potentials do exist, the system resumes the process by offering it to the next-highest ranked job potential.

~1

To restart the job allocation service

1. From the Job, select the Job Allocation View.

B	All 🔻 🛛	Search Jobs and more		*• 🖬 ? 🌣 单 🐻
Operations Manag Home	Chatter	Accounts 🗸 Contacts 🗸 Contracts 🗸	Management Logs 🗸 Invoices	∨ Jobs ∨ More▼ 🖋
Sob JN-00102	2741077-144 2741077-144	+ Follow Edit Delete Plan Job	Schedule Job Invoice Job	Credit Job Match Customer
Job Name Amount Street AUD 0.00 9 Lis	goold St	Suburb Heathmont		
> Assigned	Contac	: Planning Work	Invoice Closed	✓ Mark Status as Complete
Details Related Job All	ocation Viev	N	Activity C	hatter
Job Name 🚯		Franchise ① FCS Ringwood	Email	
Job Number JN-00102		Owner 📅 Ringwood Franchisee	Create new	Add
Customer 🚯		Status 🚺 Assigned		
Request Type		Sub Status	Filters: All	time • All activities • All types
Due Date 🚯		Sub-Status Reason	Next Steps	More Steps
Job Accepted Notification Sent		If other reasons, please specify 🕚	No next steps. To get th meeting.	ings moving, add a task or set up a

2. From the Job Allocation View, press Restart Job Allocation Service.

All • Q	Search Jobs and more		★ - 🗄 ? 🌣 单 🐻
Operations Manag Home Chatter A	accounts 🗸 Contacts 🗸 Contra	cts 🗸 Management Logs 🗸	Invoices V Jobs V More V
Job JN-00102	+ Follow Edit Delete	Plan Job Schedule Job Inve	pice Job Credit Job Match Customer
Job Name Amount Street AUD 0.00 9 Lisgoold St	Suburb Heathmont		
Assigned Contact	Planning Work	Invoice Clo	sed V Mark Status as Complete
Details Related Job Allocation View		Activit	y Chatter
O Job Allocation Map	° AI	estart Job ocation grico	
C Map Satellite Drchards Warranwood	Mooroolbark S	c Contact tails	e new Add
Donvale Ringwood Croy	rdon 82 Kilsyth	Jemima Northwood	Filters: All time • All activities • All types T Refresh Expand All
	Company	9 Lisgoold Next Ste	ps More Steps
kburn Bayay Heathmont	vater 53 Address	St Heathmont VIC 3135 Australia	ps. To get things moving, add a task or set up a

3. The job will now continue being allocated. To see the effect of this, refresh the page. You should see that job allocation has progressed.





How to force allocate a job

When the job allocation system is unable to allocate a job, it is placed on the Master Franchise Profile's Job Allocation Queue.



To find the Job Allocation Queue, *See* "How to check for unallocated jobs" on page 149.

Sometimes a Job has been processed by the Job Allocation system and has not been assigned to a franchisee. In this case, manual processing is required.



For example, the Job Time Out has been reached without a franchisee accepting the Job.

The Job Allocation View allows you to Force Allocate a Job to one of the potential franchisees.



You may only select between the franchisees that were initially considered potentials for the Job. If you need to allocate the Job to a franchisee other than one of the **Job Potentials**, then you need to assign the Job manually. *See* "How to manually allocate a job" on page 161.

To force allocate a Job to a franchisee

1. From the Job, select the Job Allocation View.

• • @		All 👻 🔍 Search Salesforce				*	- 🖬 ? 🌣 🜲 🐻
Operations Manag	Home Chatter Accounts 🗸	Contacts 🗸 Contracts 🗸	Management Logs 🗸 Invoi	ices 🗸 Payments	✓ Expenses ✓	Jobs 🗸 Job Offers	∨ More▼ 🧳
IN-00109	11 - DAXED C <i>ETTE</i> SANG C	XXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXX	+ Follow Edit	Delete Plan Jol	Schedule Job	Invoice Job Credit	Job Match Customer
Job Name Amount AUD 0.00	Street Suburb 15 Viviani Cres Heathn	nont					
) Unassigned	Assigned C	ontact Planning	Work	Invoice		Closed	Mark Status as Complete
Details Related	Job Allocation View				Activity	Chatter	
Job Name 🚺		Franchise 🕕		1	Email		
Job Number JN-00109		Owner	tions Site Guest User	£	Create new		Add
Customer 🚯		Status 🔕 Unassigned		1		Eiltor: All time -	All activities - All types
Request Type		Sub Status		1		riners: All time * /	Refresh Expand All

2. Press the selected Franchisee's **Force Allocate** button.

•••®	All 💌 🔍 Search Salesforce	*- 🖬 ? 🌣 뵺 🐻
Operations Manag Home Chatter Accounts	✓ Contacts ✓ Contracts ✓ Management Logs ✓ Invoices ✓ Payme	ents v Expenses v Jobs v Job Offers v More v A
Job JN-00109 Job Name Amount Street Suburt AUD 0.00 15 Viviari Cres Heatt	rb hmont	an Job Schedule Job Invoice Job Credit Job Match Customer
Unassigned Assigned	Contact Planning Work Inv	voice Closed V Mark Status as Complete
Details Related Job Allocation View		Activity Chatter
O Job Allocation Map	Restart Job Allocation Service	Email
Map Satellite Park Orchards Warranwood	Job Contact Details	Create new Add
te den Waverley Wording Box Hill Box Hill Blackburn Forest Hill Warting Blackburn Forest Hill Warting Baysw Bay	Moorcollapit/k File Croydon Kileyth Kileyth Kileyth Bay Watter To Solution Boronia The Basin The Basin Sas Boronia Termoor Live The Basin File Out Termoor Live Boronia	Filters: All time - All activities - All types Refresh Expand All Next Steps More Steps No next steps. To get things moving, add a task or set up a meeting. Past Activities No past activity. Past meetings and tasks marked as done show up here. Load More Past Activities To add More Past Activities<
	C EXPIRED/TIMED O JOB POTENTIALS O OTHERS	
Force Allocate JPN-00198	Bayswater VIC	
Force Allocate JPN-00199	FCS Ringwood East	
Force Allocate JPN-00200	FCS Ringwood	

3. The **Job** is now assigned to the selected franchisee.

Operatio	ns Manag	Home Chatter Ac	All ▼ counts ∨ Con	Q Search Salesforce	Management Logs 🗸	Invoices 🗸	Payments	∨ Expenses ∨	Jobs 🗸	Job Offers 🗸] ? భ ≞ 🐻 More ▼ 🖌 🖋
500 Job JN-0010	9				+ Follow	Edit Delete	Plan Job	Schedule Job	Invoice Job	Credit Job	Match Customer
Job Name	Amount AUD 0.00	Street 15 Viviani Cres	Suburb Heathmont								
$\overline{\mathbf{O}}$	~ >	Assigned	Contact	Planning	Work	\rangle	Invoice) (Closed	✓ Mar	k Status as Complete
Details	Related	Job Allocation View						Activity	Chatter		
Job Name 🕥			1	Franchise FCS Ringwood				Email			
Job Number JN-00109				Owner			£	Create new			Add
Request Type			1	Assigned			<u></u>		Filter	s: All time • All act	ivities • All types 🔻
Due Date 🔞				Sub-Status Reason				Next Steps			Refresh Expand All

How to manually allocate a job

When the job allocation system is unable to allocate a job, it is placed on the Master Franchise Profile's Job Allocation Queue.



To find the Job Allocation Queue, *See* "How to check for unallocated jobs" on page 149.

Jobs owned by the Job Allocation Queue may need to be manually allocated if the intended franchisee is not listed as a Job Potential.



If the franchisee is listed as a Job Potential, *See* "How to force allocate a job" on page 158.

To manually allocate a job

1. From the **Job**, press the **Edit** button.

- -		All	▼ Q	Search Jobs a	and more							? 🏚 🏚	6
Operatio	ons Manag	Home C	Chatter /	Accounts 🗸	Contacts	√ Co	ntracts 🗸	Managem	nent Logs 🗸 🗸	Invoices	s 🗸 Jobs 🗸	✓ More ▼	
Job JN-0010	08	S) (7777-3)	.16.77_>XXIII	+ Follow	Edit	Delete	Plan Job	Schedu	le Job Invo	ice Job	Credit Job	Match Custor	mer
Job Name	Amount AUD 0.00	Street 12 Lisgol	d Street	Suburb Heathr	nont								
Unassi	igned Ass	signed	Contact	Plar	ning	Wo	rk	Invoice	Clos	ed	✓ Mark	Status as Comp	olete
Details	Related	Job Alloca	tion View	ı					Activity	,	Chatter		
Job Name 🕕				Franchise 🚺					Email				
Job Number JN-00108				Owner Default Job	Queue			£	Create	new		Ad	
Customer 🚯				Status 🕕 Unassigned				1					
Request Type				Sub Status				_		Filters: A	All time • All activ	rities • All types	
Due Date 🕕				Sub-Status Re	ason				Next Step	S	More Steps		
Job Accepted No	tification Sent			If other reaso	ns, please sp	oecify 🕚		1	No next ste	ps. To get	things moving, a	add a task or set	: up a
<u></u>				Territory Cate	gory			1	meeting. Past Activ	ities			

2. In the Franchise field, search for the franchise you wish to assign the job to.

🖍 Operations Manag H	All 💌 🖸	Search Jobs and more Accounts Contacts Contracts Ma	nagement Logs v Invoices v Jobs v Morev
^{30b} JN-00108		+ Follow Edit Delete Plan Job S	Schedule Job Invoice Job Credit Job Match Customer
ob Name Amount AUD 0.00	Street 12 Lisgold Street	Suburb Heathmont	
Unassigned Assigned	I Contac	t Planning Work In	voice Closed V Mark Status as Complete
Details Related Jo	b Allocation Vie	w	Activity Chatter
Job Name 🕚		Franchise 0 5	Email
Job Number JN-00108		Q "ring" in Accounts	Create new Add
Customer (1) Search Accounts	Q,	FCS Ringwood East	Filters: All time • All activities • All types
Request Type		+ New Account	Next Steps More Steps
None	•	None View all dependencies	No next steps. To get things moving, add a task or set up a meeting.
Due Date 🚯		Sub-Status Reason	Past Activities
	Ē	None View all dependencies	No past activity. Past meetings and tasks marked as done show up here.
Job Accepted Notification Sent		If other reasons, please specify 🔹 🕕	Load More Past Activities
		Territory Category	

3. Now change the Status to Assigned.

Operations Manag			
	Home Chatter	Accounts \lor Contacts \lor Contracts \lor	Management Logs 🗸 Invoices 🗸 Jobs 🗸 More 🗸
NOMENLIN MURICIPALI		MUMMA DAST CAMENAND MAA D	AND
Sob JN-00108		+ Follow Edit Delete Plan Job	Schedule Job Invoice Job Credit Job Match Cu:
Job Name Amount	Street	Suburb	
AUD 0.00	12 Lisgold Street	Heathmont	
	Cost (III) Costan		
Unassigned Assigne	d Conta	ct Planning Work	Invoice Closed V Mark Status as Co
Details Related J	ob Allocation Vie	ew	Activity Chatter
Job Name		Franchise 0	Email
			Create new
Job Number		Owner C	
JN-00108		Default Job Queue	Filters: All time • All activities • All typ
Customer 🚯		Status 🚯	Refresh E
Search Accounts	Q		Novt Stops
Pequest Tupe		None	indre steps
None	•	✓ Unassigned	No next steps. To get things moving, add a task or meeting
		Assigned	Past Activitios
Due Date 🚯		Contact	Fast Activities
	苗	Planning	No past activity. Past meetings and tasks marked a
		Work - 8	Load More Past Activitie
Job Accepted Notification Sent		Tauria	
		Invoice	
	Cancel	Save	
low switch the ov		Q Search Jobs and more	★ ▼ 目 ? ‡
low switch the ov	All -	Q Search Jobs and more Accounts	Management Logs v Invoices v Jobs v More v
Operations Manag	Home Chatter	Q Search Jobs and more Accounts ✓ Contracts ✓	Management Logs v Invoices v Jobs v More v
Iow switch the ov Image: Competitions Manag Image: Job Image: Job Image: Job	Home Chatter	 Q Search Jobs and more Accounts V Contacts V Contracts V + Follow Edit Delete Plan Job 	Management Logs v Invoices v Jobs v More v Schedule Job Invoice Job Credit Job Match Cus
Iow switch the ov Image: Comparations Manag Image: Job JN-00108	Home Chatter	Q Search Jobs and more Accounts ✓ Contracts ✓ + Follow Edit Delete Plan Job	Management Logs v Invoices v Jobs v More v Schedule Job Invoice Job Credit Job Match Cus
Jow switch the ov Coperations Manag Job JN-00108	Home Chatter	 Q Search Jobs and more Accounts V Contacts V Contracts V + Follow Edit Delete Plan Job 	Management Logs ∨ Invoices ∨ Jobs ∨ More ↓ Schedule Job Invoice Job Credit Job Match Cus
Jow switch the ov Image: Comparations Manag Image: Co	Home Chatter	Q Search Jobs and more Accounts Contacts + Follow Edit Delete Plan Job	Management Logs V Invoices V Jobs V More V Schedule Job Invoice Job Credit Job Match Cus Invoice Closed V Mark Status as Co
Jow switch the ov Image: Competitions Manag Image: Operations Manag Image: O	Home Chatter	Q Search Jobs and more Accounts Contacts + Follow Edit Delete Planning Work ew	Management Logs V Invoices V Jobs V More V Schedule Job Invoice Job Credit Job Match Cus Invoice Closed V Mark Status as Co Activity Chatter
Jow switch the ov Image: Comparations Manag Image: Operations Manag Job Job Job Job Operations Manag Image: Operations Manag Job Job Details Related Job Name	Home Chatter	Q. Search Jobs and more Accounts Contacts + Follow Edit Delete Plan Job Accounts Planning Work Work Eww Franchise	Management Logs V Invoices V Jobs V More V Schedule Job Invoice Job Credit Job Match Cus Invoice Closed V Mark Status as Co Activity Chatter
Jow switch the ov Image: Comparison of the operations Manag Image: Operations Manag Image: Job Job Job Job Job Job Job Name Image: Operations Manag	Home Chatter	Q Search Jobs and more Accounts ✓ Contacts ✓ + Follow Edit Delete Planning Work etw Franchise FCS Ringwood	Management Logs V Invoices V Jobs V More V Schedule Job Invoice Job Credit Job Match Cus Invoice Closed V Mark Status as Co Activity Chatter Email
Job Number	Home Chatter	Q Search Jobs and more Accounts Contacts + Follow Edit Delete Plan Job Accounts Planning Work Franchise FCS Ringwood Owner	Management Logs V Invoices V Jobs V More V Schedule Job Invoice Job Credit Job Match Cus Invoice Closed V Mark Status as Co Activity Chatter Email
Jow switch the ov Competence of the overall of the	Home Chatter	Q Search Jobs and more Accounts ✓ Contracts ✓ + Follow Edit Delete Plan Job hct Planning Work ew FCS Ringwood Owner Default Job Queue Statut ©	Management Logs V Invoices V Jobs V More V Schedule Job Invoice Job Credit Job Match Cus Invoice Closed V Mark Status as Co Activity Chatter Email Create new
Job Operations Manag Operations Manag Job Job Assignt Details Related J Job Number JN-00108 Customer ©	Home Chatter	Q Search Jobs and more Accounts ∨ Contracts ∨ + Follow Edit Delete Planning Work etw Franchise ● FCS Ringwood Owner Default Job Queue Status ● Assigned Status ●	Management Logs V Invoices V Jobs V More V Schedule Job Invoice Job Credit Job Match Cus Invoice Closed V Mark Status as Co Activity Chatter
Job Operations Manag Operations Manag Job Job Job Assignt Details Related J Job Number JN-00108 Customer © Request Type	Home Chatter	Q Search Jobs and more Accounts Contacts + Follow Edit Delete Planning Work Every Every Franchise Franchise Franchise Franchise Franchise Assigned Sub Status Sub Status	Management Logs V Invoices V Jobs V More V Schedule Job Invoice Job Credit Job Match Cus Invoice Closed V Mark Status as Co Activity Chatter Email Create new Filters: All time + All activities + All typ
Job Number Job Number Job Number Job Number Job Number Job Number JN-00108 Customer © Request Type	VNET.	Q. Search Jobs and more Accounts Contacts Contracts + Follow Edit Delete Plan Job ect Planning Work ett Status Status Sub Status Status Status	Management Logs V Invoices V Jobs V More V Schedule Job Invoice Job Credit Job Match Cus Invoice Closed V Mark Status as Co Activity Chatter Email Create new Filters: All time + All activities + All typ Refresh E
Job Number Job Number Job Number Job Number Job Number Job Number JN-00108	All Conta C	Q Search Jobs and more Accounts Contacts + Follow Edit Delete Planning Work ew Franchise • Franchise • FCS Ringwood Owner Default Job Queue Status • Assigned Sub Status Sub Status Reason	Management Logs Invoices Schedule Job Invoice Job Closed Mark Status as Co Activity Chatter Email Create new Filters: All time + All activities + All typ Refresh E Next Steps
Job Switch the ov Coperations Manag Coperations Manag Coperations Manag Coperations Manag Coperations Manag Customer Details Related J Job Number JN-00108 Customer Request Type Due Date Due Date	All Conta C	Q Search Jobs and more Accounts Contacts + Follow Edit Delete Plan Job Accounts Planning Work et Planning Work Work Franchise FCS Ringwood Owner Default Job Queue Status Sub Status Sub Status Sub Status Reason If other reasons, please specify	Management Logs Invoices Schedule Job Invoice Job Closed Mark Status as Co Activity Chatter Email Create new Filters: All time + All activities + All typ Refresh E Next Steps
Job Number Job Number Job Number Job Number Job Number Job Number JN-00108	All Conta C	Q Search Jobs and more Accounts Contacts + Follow Edit Delete Planning Work	Management Logs Invoices Schedule Job Invoice Job Closed Mark Status as Co Activity Chatter Email Create new Filters: All time + All activities + All typ Refresh E No next Steps No next steps. To get things moving, add a task or meeting.

The **Change Owner** dialog box displays.

5. Select the responsible person associated with the Franchise, then press Change Owner.



How to manually close a job

To manually close a job

1. Set the Franchise to be the Master Franchise.

Operations Manag Home Chatter	Q. Search Jobs and more Accounts Contacts Contracts Managem	ent Logs v Invoices v Payments v More v
Job JN-00216	+ Follow Edit Clone Plan	Job Quote Job Schedule Job Invoice Job Credit Jo
b Name Amount Street \$0.00 99 Grenfell Street	Suburb Adelaide	
Unassigned Assigned Con	ntact Planning Work Inv	voice Closed 🗸 Mark Status as Complete
DETAILS RELATED		ACTIVITY CHATTER
Job Name	Franchise	5
		Log a Call New Event New Task More
Job Number JN-00216	Owner Master Job Queue	Log a Call New Event New Iask More Create new Add
lob Number IN-00216 Customer	Owner Master Job Queue Status	Log a Call New Event New Iask More Create new Add
lob Number IN-00216 Customer Search Accounts C	Owner Master Job Queue Status Q. Unassigned	Log a Call New Event New lask More Create new Add Activity Timeline Create Activity Timeline Create New Lask More
lob Number IN-00216 Customer Search Accounts CC Request Type	Owner Master Job Queue Status Queue Status	Log a Call New Event New Iask More Create new Add Activity Timeline • • • •
lob Number IN-00216 Search Accounts C Request Type None	Image: Status Queue Status Unassigned Sub Status Vonce-	Log a Call New Event New Iask More Create new Add Activity Timeline
lab Number IN-00216 Customer Search Accounts C Request Type None- Due Date	Image: Point New York A Owner Master Job Queue Status Unassigned Sub Status - None - Sub Status Reason -	Log a Call New Event New lask More Create new Add Activity Timeline C C Expand <i>I</i> Next Steps No next steps. To get things moving, add a task or set
lob Number IN-00216 Customer Search Accounts CC Request Type None- Due Date	Windowski (Comparison) Commer Owner Master Job Queue Status Unassigned Sub Status None Sub Status Reason None None None	Log a Call New Event New lask More Create new Add Activity Timeline Y C Expand J Next Steps More Ste No next steps. To get things moving, add a task or set u meeting.
Job Number IN 00216 Customer Search Accounts CC Request Type None Due Date Job Accepted Notification Sent	Windowski A Owner Master Job Queue Status Status -None -None Sub-Status Reason -None I other reasons, please specify I	

2. Set the Status to *Closed* the Substatus to *Not Proceeding*, and select a Substatus Reason, then press **Save**.

*®	Q Search Jobs and more	** 🖬 ? 🐥 👼
Operations Manag Home Chatter	Accounts V Contacts V Contracts V Manager	ment Logs 🗸 Invoices 🗸 Payments 🗸 More 🔻
Job JN-00216	+ Follow Edit Clone Plan	Job Quote Job Schedule Job Invoice Job Credit Job
Job Name Amount Street \$0.00 99 Grenfell Street	Suburb Adelaide	
Unassigned Assigned Contra	Unassigned Assigned	ce Closed V Mark Status as Complete
DETAILS RELATED	Contact Planning	ACTIVITY CHATTER
Job Name	Work	Log a Call New Event New Task More
Job Number JN-00216	✓ Closed	Create new Add
Customer Search Accounts Q	Closed	
Request Type	Sub Status	Activity Timeline C Expand All
None V	Not Proceeding	Next Steps More Steps
Due Date	Duplicate Job	No next steps. To get things moving, add a task or set up a meeting.
Job Accepted Notification Sent	If other reasons, please specify	Past Activity
Cance	el Save	No past activity. Past meetings and tasks marked as done

Troubleshooting job allocation

Troubleshooting can assist you in figuring out why a job has not been allocated when you expect that it should have. The basic process for troubleshooting is to identify where in the process the Job or Job Offer reached.

To understand the diagnostic procedures explained below, you need to have understood the topics in the following chapters:

- "Understanding Job Allocation" on page 119
- * "Managing Job Allocation" on page 143

Please ensure you read and understand these topics before attempting to follow the procedure below.

It will also help to study successfully allocated **Jobs** and **Job Offers** to familiarize yourself with the normal operation of the system.

Allocation process

The normal process for Job Allocation follows this pattern.



You can use the following figure as a checklist to help you quickly diagnose what might have gone wrong with this particular job allocation.



Status: Unassigned

Any job whose Status is *Unassigned* when the Owner field is blank has not passed through job allocation. There are a variety of reasons why a job may not have entered job allocation. Work through the following headings to see whether any of these things may be true.

A Substatus of In Allocation has recently been added to the Unassigned Status. In Allocation means that the job is currently being processed by the Job Allocation System.

Sub Status is On Hold

This is a duplicate match.

See

» "How to check for duplicate jobs" on page 147.

Job potentials are not generated

On the **Job**, turn to the **Job Allocation View** tab. Are there **Job Offers** or **Job Potentials** listed beneath the Map. If there are none, the system was unable to match the job address with a Territory.

See

- » "Location is empty" below
- » "Territory is empty" below

Location is empty

On the Job's Details tab, check the Territory & Territory Location section. If the Location field is empty, it means that the address was not able to be located.

- » Is the job address blank?
- » Is the job address misspelled?
- » Can you locate the job address in Google Maps?

lf yes

» See "What to do when the job address is not recognized" on page 151.

Territory is empty

On the Job's Details tab, check the Job Territory & Territory Location section. If the Territory field is empty, it means that the system was unable to match the suburb and postcode against a predefined Territory Location belonging to an active Territory.

- » Is the job address Suburb and Postcode entered correctly?
- Is there a Territory Location record with this exact combination of Suburb and Postcode?
- » Is the Territory Location owned by a Territory that is Active?
- » Does the active **Territory** belong to the correct **Master Franchise Profile** account?
- » Double-check for duplicate **Territory** records.

lf yes

- 1. Edit the job address, or
- 2. From the **Territory** record, check whether there is a **Territory Location** containing this combination of Suburb and Postcode. You may need to create a new one or correct an existing one (if it has the wrong detail).
- 3. Are there duplicate Territory records? If so, you may need to make one inactive and shift any **Territory Locations** to the correct **Territory** record.

4. Does the **Territory** record belong to the wrong **Master Franchise Profile**? If so, you may need to correct the Master Franchise Profile on the **Territory**.

Territory status is unexpectedly "unowned"

When you check the **Territory** Status, you see that it is owned; but when you check the **Job**'s Territory Status field, it says unowned.

>> Is there a duplicate **Territory** record?

lf yes

- » You will want to eliminate the duplication. To do this, you may need to:
 - » Make one of the Territories inactive (uncheck the Active checkbox).
 - If there are Territory Locations on the inactive Territory, consider whether they need to be reassigned to the Active Territory.

Job offers outstanding

Check the most recent Job Offer to check its Status. On the **Job**, choose the **Job Allocation View** tab. Click the most recent Job Offer Number (i.e. the one at the bottom).

- » Is the Status *Queued*? If so, check the Scheduled Offer Time field.
 - Is Scheduled Offer Time empty? (The franchisee is the owner of the territory and has an outstanding offer.)
 - Does Scheduled Offer Time have a date and time? (The offer was made out of hours. It will be issued at the specified time.)
- " Is the Status Pending? (Franchisee is yet to accept or reject the offer.)
- >> Is the Status Timed Out? (Franchisee did not respond within the Offer Time Out.)

Job owner is Job Allocation Queue

The job allocation queue name is implementation-dependent. The name that appears as owner might be "Job Allocation Queue" or "Default Allocation Queue" or similar. Check with your system administrator if you are not sure.

Jobs that are owned by the Job Allocation Queue have passed through the Job Allocation process without being allocated. See why:

On the Job's Job Allocation View tab, check each Job Offer. Does each Status show Declined or Timed Out? (The job timed out.)

- If there are remaining Job Potentials, does each show an Exclusion Reason? (Job timed out and some of the job potentials were ineligible for the job.)
- If there are Job Potentials that have no Exclusion Reason, click on the last Job Offer's Job Offer Number. Check the Offer Time Out field. Is the Job Time Out later than the Offer Time Out. (The offer timed out before it offered it to all potential franchisees.)

lf yes

- 1. If there are unoffered job potentials, restart the job allocation system, *See* "How to restart job allocation" on page 154, or
- 2. Force allocate to a franchisee, See "How to force allocate a job" on page 158, or
- 3. Manually allocate the job, See "How to manually allocate a job" on page 161.

To maintain quality of customer service, you may choose to call a franchisee and warn them that a job offer is coming that you would like them to accept. Doing this may prevent multiple cycles of declined or ignored jobs.

A franchisee is not receiving job offers

Is the franchisee being considered within the job potentials of recent job offers in or around their territory? Take a look at some recent jobs.

- If the franchisee appears on a Job Potential in Job Allocation View, is there an Exclusion Reason? (The exclusion reason will tell you why the franchisee is not receiving job offers.)
- Does the Job Allocation View show that the franchisee is being made an offer? (The issue is related to configuration of job offer notifications.)
 - » Is the Franchise Profile Account's Notification Preference set correctly?
 - » Is a Notification SMS set?
 - » Is there a Notification Contact?
 - " Is the Notification Contact's Email Address correct?

- If the franchisee is not appearing on any Job Potentials, check the setup of the Franchise Profile Account, the Territory and the Territory Locations.
 - » Are there matching Territory Location records?
 - » Is the Territory Active?
 - " Is the Franchise Profile Account Active?
 - Does the Franchise listed on the Territory match the franchisee's Franchise Profile Account? Check for duplicate Territory or Franchise Profile Account records.

For more information, *See* "How to configure a franchise profile for job allocation" on page 103.

No franchisees are receiving job offers via SMS

Check the status of your Twilio account. You may have an unpaid balance or a credit card that has expired.

SMS was received but no email

Check the Franchise Profile Account's Job Allocation Information section.

- » Does Email appear in the Notification Preference field?
- » Is there a Notification Contact?
- » Does the Notification Contact have a correct Email address?

lf no

Change the Notification Preference setting to include email and ensure the Notification Contact is set and has an Email address.

Email was received but no SMS

Check the Franchise Profile Account's Job Allocation Information section.

- » Does SMS appear in the Notification Preference field?
- " Is the a Notification SMS set?

lf no

Change the Notification Preference setting to include SMS and ensure the Notification SMS is correct.

A job is allocated but no offer was received by the franchisee

Check the Job's System Information section.

" Who created the job? (The job may have been created manually.)

A job was allocated to the wrong franchisee

If a job is allocated to an unexpected franchisee, there are several factors that may be involved:

- » Google may have matched the address to a different suburb
- » A franchisee may be redirecting offers to a different franchisee
- » Territories and Territory Locations may be misconfigured

Let's work through the above issues in turn.

Incorrect address

V Job Contact Information

Occasionally, Google may match a supplied address to quite a different location. You can check that by comparing the Supplied Address field with the Geocoded Address. If the address has any significant difference, you may choose to correct the address. See "What to do when the job address is not recognized" on page 151.

Salutation ()		Force Street Address	
	1		/
First Name		Street	
Iain	/	18 Bang Ban St	
Last Name		Suburb	
Test3		KOORAWATHA	
Company		Postcode	
		2807	
Email		Country	
		Australia	
Mobile		State	
		NSW	
Other Phone		Geo-code Accuracy	
		GEOMETRIC_CENTER	
Supplied Address 0		Geocoded Address 0	
18 Bang Ban St, KOORAWATHA		Bang Bang Rd, Koorawatha NSW 2807, Australia	/
NSW 2807 Australia		((route) GEOMETRIC_CENTER)	
Map Job			
view Google Map			
Job Description			
More Information			
TEST3 - Build it, lock it and repair it			/
Job Scheduled Date/Time			
			/

Redirection

It is possible to transfer job offers to another franchisee. If this setting is configured, the job may end up with another franchisee. *See* "Temporary unavailability of franchisee" on page 111.
Misconfigured Territory Locations

If a Territory Location contains the suburb and postcode used in the address and is attached to the wrong Territory, this may cause the job to be allocated to an unintended franchisee. If this is the case, correct it by editing the Territory field on the **Territory Location** record.

Can't figure it out?

If you've worked through this troubleshooting topic and still can't figure out what is going on, feel free to open a support ticket with our <u>Service Desk</u>.

6

Working with Management Logs

Understanding management logs	
Meeting	
Induction	177
Field audit	178
Business review	179
How to create a management log entry	
How to record attendees and apologies	
How to record meeting minutes	
How to record supporting evidence	
How to view all management logs for a particular franchise	

Understanding management logs

Management Logs provide franchisors the ability to keep detailed records of actions and notes regarding the performance of franchisees. Records entered under Management Logs are not visible to franchisees. Management Logs are especially useful for demonstrating compliance and supporting the franchisor in the case of disputes.

There are four types of management log records:

- » Meeting
- » Business Review
- » Field Audit
- » Induction

Meeting

Use meetings to record any phone or in-person meeting with the franchisee or the franchisee's employees or contractors. Facilities to set a meeting; send meeting reminders; track invitees, attendees and apologies; and record meeting minutes are all built in.

CARPET COURT	All	▼ Q Search M	Management Logs and more				*		?‡		
Operations Manag Home Chatter Accounts V	Con	tacts 🗸 Contracts	s 🗸 Customer Feedback 🗸	Tasks 🗸 Ma	anagement Logs 🗸 🗸	Territ	ories 🗸 Ter	ritory Locations	√ Mo	ere 🔻	/
Management Log LOG-00005								+ Follow	Edit	Clone	Delete
Record Type Type Organiser Meeting Store visit - general Greg Zeegers	Sta 2/	^{rt} 12/2020, 12:00 pm	End 2/12/2020, 2:30 pm	Status Pending							
Details Related					Act	ivity	Chatter				
Log Number LOG-00005		Owner	Dean Llewellyn		£ Log	a Call	New Event	New Task	Email		
Status 🚺 Pending	1	Туре 🚯	Store visit - general				Dece				
Start 0 2/12/2020, 12:00 pm	/	Franchise 🚺	Barry Evans Furniture & Flo	oorcoverings			Reci	ip your call			Add
End 2/12/2020, 2:30 pm	1	Organiser 🚯	Greg Zeegers		<u> </u>			Filters: All ti	me • All act	ivities • All	types 🔻
Cell Group									Refresh	• Expand	All • View All
✓ Reminder Details											
Send Email Reminder 🚯 🔽	1	Send Email Reminder	r 👩 1/12/2020, 12:00 pm		~ (Jpcomir	ng & Overdue				
		Date					To get things mo	No next step ving. add a task	5. or set up a	meeting.	
✓ Attendee Summary							io Ber anigo ino		or set up o	B.	
Number of Attendees 👔 0		Number of Apologies	s O O		N	o past a	ctivity. Past meet	ings and tasks r	narked as o	ione show	up here.
✓ System Information					ĭ≡	Activi	ity Lists				Add List
Created By — Dean Llewellyn, 27/11/2020, 1:07 pm		Last Modified By	Dean Llewellyn, 27/11	l/2020, 1:07 pm	N	AME	NUMBER OF	TASKS	COMPLE	TED TASK	5
Currency AUD - Australian Dollar	1	Record Type	Meeting								

• ` ®	Q Search Management Logs and more	** 🖬 ? 🐥 🐻
Operations Manag Home Chatte	Accounts V Contacts V Contracts V Man	agement Logs 🗸 Invoices 🗸 Payments 🗸 More 🔻 💉
Management Log LOG-00026		+ Follow Edit Clone Delete
Record Type Type Organis Meeting Ongoing Support	r Start 5 Operations Manager 22/05/2018 12:00 PM	End Status 23/05/2018 12:00 PM Completed
DETAILS RELATED		ACTIVITY CHATTER
Log Number LOG-00026	Owner	Log a Call New Event New Task More
Status Completed	Type Ongoing Support	
Start 22/05/2018 12:00 PM	Franchise FCS Bondi Beach	Create new Add
End 23/05/2018 12:00 PM	Organiser	Activity Timeline C Expand All
Cell Group		Next Steps More Steps
✓ Reminder Details		> 🔚 🗌 New Franchisee I 11/11/2017 💌
Send Email Reminder	Send Email Reminder Date 21/05/2018 4:30 PM	OPS Field Manager has an upcoming Task > ≦ Issue Operations 11/11/2017
✓ Attendee Summary		OPS Operations Manager has an upcoming Task
Number of Attendees 1	Number of Apologies 1	Past Activity
✓ System Information		show up here.
Created By	Last Modified By	Load More Past Activities
Currency Australian Dollar	Record Type Meeting	Activity Lists Add List

Induction

Inductions are particularly designed for training new contractors or employees of the franchisee. As with meetings, the Induction record provides a way to set a meeting; send meeting reminders; track invitees, attendees and apologies; and record meeting minutes.

• ` ®			Q Search Salesfor	rce			*• 🖬 ? 🐥 陵
Operatio	ns Manag Hor	ne Chatter	Accounts 🗸 Contac	ts 🗸 Contracts 🗸	Management Logs	✓ Invoices ✓ Paymen	nts 🗸 More 🔻 🥒
Manageme LOG-000	int Log 020					+ Follow	Edit Clone Delete
Record Type Induction	Organiser	Field	Manager OPS Field Manager	Start 1/06/2018 9:00 AM	End 1/06/2018	Status 4:00 PM Confirmed	
DETAILS	RELATED					ACTIVITY CH.	ATTER
Log Number LOG-00020 Status			Owner OPS Operati Franchise	ons Manager		Log a Call New Ever	nt New Task More
Start 1/06/2018 9:00	D AM		Organiser	anager		Create new	Add
End 1/06/2018 4:00) PM		Field Manager	anager		Activity Timeline	C Expand All
∽ Reminder I	Details					Next Steps	More Steps
Send Email Remine	der		Send Email Remind 31/05/2018 12:	ier Date 00 PM		> 🔚 🗌 New Fran OPS Operations	chisee I 30/10/2017 💌
✓ Attendee S	Summary					> 🚝 🗌 Book com	mence 30/10/2017 🔻
Number of Attendo	ees		Number of Apologi 0	es		OPS Field Mana	ger has an upcoming Task
∽ System Inf	ormation					Past Activity	
Created By OPS Operat 25/10/2017 10	ions Manager, :49 AM		Last Modified By OPS Head O 23/05/2018 10:	ffice Manager, 28 AM		No past activity. Past mee show	tings and tasks marked as done w up here. Load More Past Activities
Australian Dolla	r		Induction			Activity Lists	Add List

Field audit

Field audits allow a franchisor to send their Compliance Manager into the field to ensure franchisees meet the operating standards required of them. The Field Audit record provides a way to set a meeting; send meeting reminders; and record meeting minutes.

••*®		Q Search Management Logs and more		★ 🖬 ? 🐥 👼
Operations Manag	Home Chatter	Accounts 🗸 Contacts 🗸 Contracts 🗸	Management Logs 🗸	Invoices 🗸 Payments 🗸 More 👻 🧳
LOG-00054				+ Follow Edit Clone Delete
DETAILS RELATED				ACTIVITY CHATTER
Log Number LOG-00054		Owner		Log a Call New Event New Task More
Status Pending		Type Other		
Start 11/06/2018 10:00 AM		Franchise FCS Bondi Beach		Create new Add
End 12/06/2018 4:00 PM		Organiser		Activity Timeline
✓ Reminder Details				Next Steps More Steps
Send Email Reminder		Send Email Reminder Date 7/06/2018 12:00 PM		No next steps. To get things moving, add a task or set up a meeting.
✓ System Information				Past Activity
Created By OPS Head Office Manager, 23/05/2018 10:32 AM		Last Modified By OPS Head Office Manager, 23/05/2018 10:32 AM		No past activity. Past meetings and tasks marked as done show up here.
Currency Australian Dollar		Record Type Field Audit		
				Activity Lists Add List

Business review

Business reviews are scheduled on a periodic basis. As with meetings, a Business Review record provides a way to set a meeting; send meeting reminders; track invitees, attendees and apologies; and record meeting minutes. You can plan for and schedule the next Business Review Date.

• ` @	Q Search Salesforce	* 🖬 ? 🐥 🐻
Operations Manag Home Chatter	Accounts V Contacts V Contracts V Management Logs	✓ Invoices ✓ Payments ✓ More ▼
Management Log LOG-00051		+ Follow Edit Clone Delete
Record Type Organiser Business Review OPS Compliance Manager	Business Review Completed By Start	End Status 31/05/2018 12:00 PM Confirmed
DETAILS RELATED		ACTIVITY CHATTER
Log Number LOG-00051	Owner	Log a Call New Event New Task More
Confirmed //	FCS Coogee Business Review Completed By	Create new Add
28/05/2018 12:00 PM	OPS Compliance Manager Next Business Review Date 1/11/2018	Activity Timeline
Organiser OPS Compliance Manager		Next Steps More Steps
✓ Reminder Details		No next steps. To get things moving, add a task or set up a meeting.
Send Email Reminder	Send Email Reminder Date 24/05/2018 12:00 PM	Past Activity
✓ Attendee Summary		No past activity. Past meetings and tasks marked as done show up here.
Number of Attendees 2	Number of Apologies O	Load More Past Activities 🔻
✓ System Information		Activity Lists
Created By OPS Head Office Manager, 21/05/2018 3:14 PM	Last Modified By OPS Head Office Manager, 23/05/2018 10:23 AM	NAME NUMBER OF TASKS COMPLETED TASKS
Currency Australian Dollar	Record Type Business Review	

How to create a management log entry

To create a management log entry

1. From the Salesforce Management Logs tab, press New.

•		Q	Search Management Logs and more.			? 🌲 🐻
***	Operations Manag	Home Chatter Accoun	ts 🗸 Contacts 🗸 Contracts	Management Logs 🗸 Ir	voices 🗸 Payments 🗸 More 🔻	di seconda de la constante de
7 item	Management Logs Recently Viewed v s · Updated a minute ago				2	New
	LOG NUMBER	V TYPE	V START	✓ STATUS	✓ ORGANISER	~
1	LOG-00050	Ongoing Support	1/07/2018 12:00 PM	In Progress	OPS Field Manager	•
2	LOG-00049		2/05/2018 12:00 PM	Pending	OPS Field Manager	•
3	LOG-00048		26/04/2018 12:00 PM	Confirmed	Shane Ross	•
4	LOG-00026	Ongoing Support	1/11/2017 12:00 PM	Completed	OPS Operations Manager	•
5	LOG-00047	Quarterly	19/04/2018 12:00 PM	Pending	OPS Field Manager	•
6	LOG-00046		19/04/2018 12:00 PM	Pending	Shane Ross	•
7	LOG-00045		10/04/2018 12:00 PM	Pending	Shane Ross	•

The New Management Log dialog box appears.

2. Select one of the management log types, then press Next.



3. Enter the New Management Log details, then press Save.

		New Manag	gement l	og: Business Rev	iew			
Information								
Log Number				Owner				
* Status				Franchise	nager			
Pending			•	FCS Coogee		×		
* Start				Business Deview Comple	atad Pu			
Date		Time			o Mapagor	×		
13/05/2018	曲	12:00 PM	0	CPS Compliand	e Mariager			
* End		-		Next Business Review Da	ate			
25/05/2018	莆	12:00 PM	0	1/11/2018		Ē		
* Organiser			0					
OPS Complia	nce Man	ager	×					
Reminder Detail	S							
Send Email Reminder				Send Email Reminder Da	ate			
				Date	Time			
						U		
System Informat	ion							
Currency				Record Type				
Australian Dollar			•	Business Review				
he Manag	eme	ent Log e	ntry d	isplays.	pre			? 🖡 🔚
Operations Mar	nag	Home Chatter	Accounts 🗸	Contacts 🗸 Contract	ts 🗸 Management Logs	✓ Invoices ✓ Pay	ments v More	• ·
Management Log LOG-00051						+ Follow	v Edit Clon	e Delete
Record Type Business Review	Organiser	Compliance Manager	Busines	s Review Completed By S Compliance Manager	Start 13/05/2018 12:00 PM	End 25/05/2018 12:0	Statu 0 PM Penc	is ling
DETAILS RELA	ATED					ACTIVITY	CHATTER	
Log Number LOG-00051			Owner	PS Head Office Manager		Long Coll Nam		Maria
Status Pending			Franchi	se		Log a Call New E	vent New Jask	wore
Start			Busines	s Review Completed By		Create new		Add
13/05/2018 12:00 PM End			Next Bu	PS Compliance Manager				
25/05/2018 12:00 PM Organiser			1/11/	2018		Activity Timeline	▼ C'	Expand All
OPS Compliance Ma	anager					Next Steps		
✓ Reminder Details						No next steps. To get t	hings moving, add a meeting.	task or set up a
Send Email Reminder			Send Er	nail Reminder Date		Past Activity		
✓ Attendee Summa	ry					No past activity. Past r	neetings and tasks m	arked as done
Number of Attendees			Numbe	r of Apologies			Load More Past 4	Activities 🔻
U			0					

How to record attendees and apologies

In cases where disputes have arisen with franchisees, it is often the case that key franchisee personnel have failed to attend critical inductions, trainings and meetings. You can keep track of the people invited to meetings as well as those attended.

To record attendees and apologies

1. From any management log entry, click the **Related** tab.

• ` ®	0	Search Management	Logs and more			*• 🖬 ? 🐥 🐻
Operations Manag Home	Chatter Accou	ints 🗸 Contacts 🗸	Contracts 🗸	Management Logs	✓ Invoices ✓ F	Payments 🗸 More 🔻 🧳
LOG-00026					+ Foll	low Edit Clone Delete
Record Type Type Meeting Ongoing Support	Organiser	Sta ons Manager 1/	art 11/2017 12:00 PM	End 2/11/2017 :	Stat 12:00 PM Cor	tus npleted
DETAILS RELATED					ACTIVITY	CHATTER
Log Number LOG-00026 Status Completed Start		Owner FCS System Admir Type Ongoing Support Franchise	nistrator		Log a Call New Create new	w Event New Task More
1/11/2017 12:00 PM End 2/11/2017 12:00 PM Cell Group		Creaniser Organiser OPS Operations M	lanager		Activity Timeline	C Expand All
✓ Reminder Details					> 👔 🗌 New	/ Franchisee I 11/11/2017 💌
Send Email Reminder		Send Email Reminder Date	2		OPS Field > ¥≡ □ Issu	Manager has an upcoming Task e Operations 11/11/2017
✓ Attendee Summary					OPS Oper	rations Manager has an upcoming Task
Number of Attendees O		Number of Apologies 0			Past Activity	

2. From the **Attendees** section, press **New**.

• - ®			Q Search	n Managemer	nt Logs and more					*		, ÷	6
Operation	ns Manag Home	Chatter A	Accounts 🗸	Contacts	🗸 Contracts 🗸	Management Logs	✓ Ir	nvoices 🚿	 Payment 	s 🗸	More 🔻		
Managemer LOG-000	nt Log 1 26							-	+ Follow	Edit	Clone	Dele	te
Record Type Meeting	Type Ongoing Support	Organiser	erations Manag	er :	Start 1/11/2017 12:00 PM	End 1 2/11/201	7 12:00 P	M	Status Completed				
DETAILS	RELATED						A	CTIVITY	СНА	TTER			
Attended	es (0)			•		New	Lo	g a Call	New Event	New	/ Task	More	
E Files (0)						Add Files		Create ne	2W			Add	
							Acti	vity Time	eline	T	C,	xpand A	AII
		t Up	oload Files				Nex	t Steps			M	lore Step	ps
		Or d	rop files				>	≝ □ <u>OP</u>	New Franc S Field Manag	hisee I er has an	. 11/11/ upcoming	2017 Task	•
							>	'≣ □ OP	Issue Oper S Operations I	ations Manager I	. 11/11/ has an upc	2017 (coming T	▼ Task

The New Attendee dialog box appears.

3. Enter the New Attendee details, then press Save.

	New Atter	luee			
Information					
Attendee Number	*	Management Log			
		E LOG-00026		×	
* Status	*	Contact			
Apology		Simon Walker		×	
Apology Reason					
loo busy					
System Information					
Currency					
Australian Dollar	•				
		Cano	el Save & Ne	ew Save	
Operations Manag Hom	C Search M	Aanagement Logs and more	Management Logs	✓ Invoices ✓ Paymer	tre v More v (
Operations Manag Hom Management Log LOG-00026 cord Type Type	Q Search M ne Chatter Accounts V O Organiser	Aanagement Logs and more Contacts v Contracts v Start	Management Logs 💉	 Invoices Payment + Follow Status 	Edit Clone Delete
Operations Manag Hom Management Log LOG-00026 cord Type Type eeting Ongoing Support	Q Search M ne Chatter Accounts ✓ Q Organiser OPS Operations Manager	Aanagement Logs and more Contacts V Contracts V Start 1/11/2017 12:00 PM	Management Logs End 2/11/2017 1	V Invoices V Paymer + Follow 12:00 PM Complete	★▼ ● ? ▲ (ts ∨ More ▼ Edit Clone Deleter d
Operations Manag Hom Management Log Log-00026 cord Type Type ongoing Support Ongoing Support DETAILS RELATED	Q Search № ne Chatter Accounts ✓ 0 Organiser OPS Operations Manager	Aanagement Logs and more Contacts V Contracts V Start 1/11/2017 12:00 PM	End 2/11/2017 1	Invoices Payment Follow Status Complete ACTIVITY CH.	More V Edit Clone Delete
Operations Manag Hom Management Log LOG-00026 cord Type Ongoing Support DETAILS RELATED Attendees (1)	Q Search № ne Chatter Accounts ∨ 0 Organiser OPS Operations Manager	Aanagement Logs and more Contacts V Contracts V Start 1/11/2017 12:00 PM	End 2/11/2017 1	Invoices V Payment Follow Status Complete ACTIVITY CH.	Image: Clone Delete Edit Clone Delete d ATTER Attraction
Operations Manag Hom Management Log LOG-00026 cord Type Type Ongoing Support Ongoing Support DETAILS RELATED Cold Attendees (1) Attendees	Q Search M ne Chatter Accounts ✓ (Organiser OPS Operations Manager FIRST NAME	Aanagement Logs and more Contacts V Contracts V Start 1/11/2017 12:00 PM STATUS	Management Logs End 2/11/2017 1	 Invoices Paymer Follow Status Complete ACTIVITY CH. Log a Call New Ever 	Image: Constraint of the second se
Operations Manag Hom Management Log LOG-00026 Support cord Type beeting Type Ongoing Support DETAILS RELATED Call Attendees (1) ATTENDEE: ATTENDEE LAST NAME ATT-000012 Walker	Q Search M ne Chatter Accounts ✓ 0 Organiser C OPS Operations Manager FIRST NAME Simon	Aanagement Logs and more Contacts V Contracts V Start 1/11/2017 12:00 PM STATUS Apology	End 2/11/2017 J	Invoices Paymen Follow Status Complete ACTIVITY CH Log a Call New Even Create new	Image: Second
Operations Manage Hom Management Log Image:	Q Search M ne Chatter Accounts ♥ 0 Organiser OPS Operations Manager FIRST NAME Simon View All	Aanagement Logs and more Contacts V Contracts V Start 1/11/2017 12:00 PM STATUS Apology	Management Logs End 2/11/2017 1	 Invoices Paymer Follow Follow Status Complete ACTIVITY CH. Log a Call New Ever Create new Activity Timeline 	More Edit Clone Add Add Y C'
Operations Manag Horr. Management Log LOG-00026 cord Type Type cord Type Ongoing Support DETAILS RELATED Common Attendees (1) ATTENDEE: ATTENDEE ATTENDEE: ATTENDEE LAST NAME ATT-000012 Walker	Q Search M ne Chatter Accounts ✓ 0 Organiser OPS Operations Manager FIRST NAME Simon View All	Aanagement Logs and more Contacts V Contracts V Start 1/11/2017 12:00 PM STATUS Apology	Management Logs End 2/11/2017 1 New Children Contemporation of the second	 Invoices Payment Follow Status L2:00 PM Complete ACTIVITY CH Log a Call New Even Create new Activity Timeline Next Steps 	More Edit Cione Delete d Add Y C' Expand All More Steps
Operations Manag Horr Management Log LOG-00026 Type Ongoing Support DETAILS RELATED ATTENDEE: ATTENDEE LAST NAME ATF-000012 Walker Files (0)	Q Search M ne Chatter Accounts ✓ O Organiser ✓ Ø OPS Operations Manager ✓ Ø FIRST NAME Simon ✓ View All ✓ ✓	Aanagement Logs and more Contacts V Contracts V Start 1/11/2017 12:00 PM STATUS Apology	End 2/11/2017 1	 Invoices Paymer Follow Status 12:00 PM Status ACTIVITY CH Log a Call New Even Create new Activity Timeline Next Steps New Fran 	Image: State of the
Operations Manag Horr Management Log LOG-000026 Image: Comparison of the second	Q Search M ne Chatter Accounts ✓ 0 Organiser Morga	Aanagement Logs and more Contacts V Contracts V Start 1/11/2017 12:00 PM STATUS Apology	End 2/11/2017 1	 Invoices Paymer Follow Status L2:00 PM Status ACTIVITY CH Log a Call New Ever Create new Activity Timeline Next Steps Next Fran OPS Field Mana 	More Edit Clone Delete d Add Y C Expand All More Steps chisee I 11/11/2017 ger has an upcoming Task
Operations Manag Horr Management Log LOG-00026 Type Ongoing Support Type DETAILS RELATED ATTENDEE: ATTENDEE LAST NAME ATF-000012 Walker Files (0)	Q Search M Organiser Organiser OPS Operations Manager FIRST NAME Simon View All View All Upload Files	Aanagement Logs and more Contacts V Contracts V Start 1/11/2017 12:00 PM STATUS Apology	Add Files	✓ Invoices ✓ Paymen	Image: The second s
Operations Manag Horr Management Log LOG-000026 Cord Type Congoing Support Type Congoing Support Congoing Support	Q Search M Organiser OPS Operations Manager FIRST NAME Simon View All ↓ Upload Files Or drop files	Aanagement Logs and more Contacts V Contracts V Start 1/11/2017 12:00 PM STATUS Apology	End 2/11/2017 1	✓ Invoices ✓ Paymen	More More

The Attendee Summary section of the Management Log Details page is also updated.

•-B			Q Search	Management L	ogs and more				* -	• ?	•
•••• Operations	s Manag Home	Chatter A	Accounts 🗸	Contacts 🗸	Contracts 🗸	Management Logs	✓ Invoice	es 🗸 Payment	s∨ I	More 🔻	đ
Management	Log 2 6							+ Follow	Edit	Clone	Delete
Record Type Meeting	Type Ongoing Support	Organiser	erations Manage	Star 1/1	t 1/2017 12:00 PM	End 2/11/201	7 12:00 PM	Status Completed			
DETAILS	RELATED						ACTIV	ІТҮ СНА	TTER		
Log Number LOG-00026 Status			Owner	System Admini	strator		Log a C	all New Event	New	Task	More
Start 1/11/2017 12:00	PM		Franchise FCS Bond	di Beach			Creat	te new			Add
End 2/11/2017 12:00	PM		Organiser	Operations Ma	nager		Activity 1	Timeline	T	C, E	xpand All
Cell Group							Next Ste	ps		M	ore Steps
✓ Reminder De	etails						> 🔚	New Franc	hisee I	11/11/	2017 💌
Send Email Reminder	r		Send Emai	I Reminder Date			> 🚝	OPS Field Manag	er has an u ations	upcoming 11/11/	Task 2017 💌
✓ Attendee Su	mmary							OPS Operations I	Manager h	as an upc	oming Task
Number of Attendee: 0	s		Number o 1	f Apologies			Past Acti	ivity			

How to record meeting minutes

You can capture meeting minutes by creating meeting notes.

To capture and record meeting notes

1. From any management log entry, click the **Related** tab.

• · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·		Q Search Manag	ement Log	gs and more						?	
Operations Manag Home	Chatter Acco	unts 🗸 Contac	cts 🗸	Contracts 🗸	Management Log	s 🗸 Ir	nvoices 🗸	Payments	s 🗸 More	• •	
Management Log LOG-00026							+	- Follow	Edit Clo	one l	Delete
Record Type Type Meeting Ongoing Support	Organiser	ons Manager	Start 1/11	/2017 12:00 PM	End 2/11/20	17 12:00 P	M	Status Completed			
DETAILS RELATED						AC	CTIVITY	CHAT	TER		
Log Number LOG-00026 Status		Owner FCS System Type	Administ	rator		Lo	g a Call	New Event	New Tasl	K Ma	ore
Completed Start 1/11/2017 12:00 PM		Ongoing Suppor Franchise FCS Bondi Beach	h				Create nev	V		4	٨dd
End 2/11/2017 12:00 PM		Organiser	ions Man	ager		Acti	vity Time	line	₹ C'	Expa	ind All
Cell Group						Nex	t Steps			More	Steps
✓ Reminder Details						> [í⊒ □	New Franch	nisee I 1	1/11/201	.7 💌
Send Email Reminder		Send Email Remind	der Date			>		Issue Opera	ations 1	1/11/201	.7 💌
✓ Attendee Summary								Operations N	nanager has a	n upcom	ing task
Number of Attendees 0		Number of Apolog 0	ies			Past	Activity				

2. From the **Notes** section, press **New**.

• - ®		Q Sear	rch Salesforce			*• 🖬 ? 🖡 👼
Operation	ns Manag Home	Chatter Accounts 🗸	Contacts 🗸 Contracts	✓ Management Logs	s 🗸 Invoices 🗸 Payme	ents 🗸 More 🔻 🖉
Managemer LOG-000	nt Log 1 26				+ Follow	Edit Clone Delete
Record Type Meeting	Type Ongoing Support	Organiser	Start ager 1/11/2017 12:0	End 00 PM 2/11/201	Status 17 12:00 PM Complete	ed
DETAILS	RELATED				ACTIVITY CH	IATTER
	es (2)			New	Log a Call New Eve	nt New Task More
ATT-000012	Walker	Simon	Apology	•	Create new	Add
ATT-000013	Walker	James	Attended	•		
		View All			Activity Timeline Next Steps	C ^I Expand All More Steps
E Files (0)				Add Files	> 🔚 🗌 New Fran OPS Field Mana	ager has an upcoming Task
		↑ Upload Files			Kernel Content of the second sec	erations 11/11/2017 💌 s Manager has an upcoming Task
		Or drop files			Past Activity	
					No past activity. Past mee sho	etings and tasks marked as done w up here.
						Load More Past Activities
😰 Notes (0)			New	Activity Lists	Add List

The built-in notes editor displays.

•••®		Q Searc	h Salesforce							? 🌲 🐻
Operations Mana	g Home	Chatter Accounts 🗸	Contacts 🗸	Contracts 🗸	Manag	gement Logs	V Invoices	 Payments 	s 🗸 More 🔻	
Management Log LOG-00026							H	Follow	Edit Clone	Delete
Record Type Type	Organiser	Start End	Status							
DETAILS RELAT	ED						ACTIVITY	CHAT	ITER	
Attendees (2)	LAST NAME	EIDST NAME	STATUS		N	lew	Log a Call	New Event	New Task	More
ATT-000012	Walker	Simon	Apology		•		Create ne	w		Add
ATT-000013	Walker	James	Attended	1		😰 Meetin	g minutes			_ ** ×
		View All				Meeting r	ninutes		G Visibility	Set by Record
Files (0)					Add	ви	2 S ≡ 1≣	= + = =		
						1. Confi 2.	rmed extra advert	ising spend fo	r up-coming quar	ter.
		1 Upload Files								
		Or drop files								
😰 Notes (0)						Related to	E LOG-00026			
						Delete)	Share	Add to Records	Done



You can still click around in the window retrieving and reviewing information while the Notes editor is open.

3. When complete, press **Done**.

The meeting minutes are displayed in the **Notes** section.

How to record supporting evidence

In addition to the four types of management log entries, attendee lists and meeting minutes, it is sometimes necessary to record documents, forms or agreements. You can record this information against any of the Management Log types by creating an attachment to the record.

To record an attachment

1. From the Management Log's Related tab, locate the Files section.

• ` @	Q Search Management Lo	ogs and more	*• 🖬 ? 单 👼
Operations Manag Home Chatter	Accounts 🗸 Contacts 🗸	Contracts 🗸 Management Logs	✓ Invoices ✓ Payments ✓ More ▼
Management Log LOG-00054			+ Follow Edit Clone Delete
DETAILS RELATED			ACTIVITY CHATTER
Attendees (0)		New	Log a Call New Event New Task More
🕒 Files (0)		Add Files	Create new Add
			Activity Timeline
	Upload Files		Next Steps ····· More Steps
o	r drop files		No next steps. To get things moving, add a task or set up a meeting.
			Past Activity
100 Notes (0)		New	No past activity. Past meetings and tasks marked as done show up here. Load More Past Activities

2. Drag a file from your computer and drop it in the **Files** section.

• * ®	Q Search Management Logs and	d more	* 🖬 ? 🐥 👼
Operations Manag Home Chatter	Accounts 🗸 Contacts 🗸 Cont	tracts 🗸 Management Logs 🗸	Invoices 🗸 Payments 🗸 More 🔻 💉
Management Log LOG-00054			+ Follow Edit Clone Delete
DETAILS RELATED			ACTIVITY CHATTER
Attendees (0)		New	Log a Call New Event New Task More
E Files (0)		Add Files	Create new Add
Meeting Minutes 20180524.pdf	Upload Files		Activity Timeline C Expand All Next Steps More Steps
c	r drop files		No next steps. To get things moving, add a task or set up a meeting.
			Past Activity
₽ Notes (0)		New	No past activity. Past meetings and tasks marked as done show up here. Load More Past Activities

The **Upload Files** dialog box appears.

3. When uploading is complete, press **Done**.

**®	Q Search Management Logs and m	lore		*• 🖬 ? 🐥 🐻		
Operations Manag Home	Chatter Accounts 🗸 Contacts 🗸 Contrac	ts 🗸 Management Logs 🗸	Invoices 🗸 Payments	V More V		
Management Log LOG-00054			+ Follow	Edit Clone Delete		
DETAILS RELATED			ACTIVITY CHAT	TER		
Attendees (0)		New	Log a Call New Event	New Task More		
E Files (0)		Add Files	Create new	Add		
		Ą	Activity Timeline	C ^I Expand All		
	▲ Upload Files Or drop files	1	No pert steps. To get things n	More Steps		
	Upload Fil	Upload Files				
Notes (0)	Meeting Minutes 20180524.pdf 639 KB		ivity. Past meeting	gs and tasks marked as done p here.		
	1 of 1 file uploaded		Done	ad More Past Activities		

The file is now attached to the **Management Log** record.

• B	Q Search Management Logs and more	*	5
Operations Manag Home Chatter	Accounts 🗸 Contacts 🗸 Contracts 🗸	Management Logs 🗸 Invoices 🗸 Payments 🗸 More 🔻	
Management Log LOG-00054		+ Follow Edit Clone Delete	
DETAILS RELATED		ACTIVITY CHATTER	
Attendees (0)		New Log a Call New Event New Task More	
🕒 Files (1)		Add Files Create new Add	
Meeting Minutes 20180524 11:15 AM • 639KB • pdf		Activity Timeline Timeline Timeline	
		Next Steps ····· More Steps	
		No next steps. To get things moving, add a task or set up a meeting.	I
		Past Activity	
N	/iew All	No past activity. Past meetings and tasks marked as done show up here.	
D Notes (0)		Load More Past Activities	
E Notes (U)		New	

How to view all management logs for a particular franchise

It is useful to be able to view all the management log entries for a particular franchise. This allows you to review all meetings, business reviews, audits and inductions conducted over a period of time.

To view all management logs for a particular franchise

1. In the Salesforce Management Logs tab, create a filter named *Management Logs for Franchise* using the filter settings shown in the screen shot below.

• - ®			Q	Search N	Managemer	t Logs and mo	re					*		?	.	5
***	Operations Mana	g Home	Chatter Accounts	~	Contacts 🔻	 Contracts 	~	Management Logs 💊	 Investigation 	oices 🗸	Payments	~	More	•		
4 items	Management Logs Management Logs • Sorted by Log Number	ogs for Franchis	5 e ▼ • Updated a minute ag	D							\$\$ *	•	C		New	
1	LOG NUMB ↑ ∨ LOG-00002	FRANCHISE v	RECORD TYPE V	star 9/10/	r 1201712.0	✓ STATUS		V NEXT BUSINE	~	Filte	rs				-	÷
2 3	LOG-00020 LOG-00026	FCS Bondi Beach FCS Bondi Beach	Induction Meeting	30/10 1/11/	Field Franc	hise			•	Sh	ow me managemen	it logs				
4	LOG-00052	FCS Bondi Beach	Business Review	13/05	Operator M					Mato	Matching all of these filters					
					Value Add Filter				uals FCS Bon	ndi Beach	ı	R	× emove A			
					FCS B	ondi Beach		Do	ne	Add	Filter Logic					

For step-by-step instructions for creating this filter, *See* "How to create your own list view" on page 18.

2. Add fields that you find useful.

	Business Review Completed E Cell Group Created By Created By Alias	>	Log Number Franchise Record Type Start	^
	Created Date Currency End Field Manager Last Activity Date Last Modified By Last Modified By Alias	<	Status Next Business Review Date	~
				Cancel
e i	For step-by-step ins	tru	ctions for adding fie	lds, <i>See</i> "How to add colum

Select Fields to Display

3. You will now be able to see all management logs for a particular franchise.

• - ®			Q Search Management	Logs and more		★• ?	. 5
***	Operations Manag	Home Chatter	Accounts 🗸 Contacts 🗸	Contracts 🗸 Management Log	gs 🗸 Invoices 🗸	Payments 🗸 More 🔻	
E 4 item	Management Logs Management Logs fo is • Sorted by Log Number • Filtere	or Franchise 💌	9 minutes ago			\$\$ • III • C *	New
	LOG NUMBER 🕇 🛛 🗸	FRANCHISE	✓ RECORD TYPE	V START V	STATUS	✓ NEXT BUSINESS REVI	~
1	LOG-00002	FCS Bondi Beach	Induction	9/10/2017 12:00 PM	Completed		•
2	LOG-00020	FCS Bondi Beach	Induction	30/10/2017 12:00 PM	Completed		•
3	LOG-00026	FCS Bondi Beach	Meeting	1/11/2017 12:00 PM	Completed		•
4	LOG-00052	FCS Bondi Beach	Business Review	13/05/2018 12:00 PM	In Progress	14/10/2018	•

If you use a filter like this frequently, you might want to create a specific filter for each franchise that you regularly review. With infrequent use, you might just change the franchise name in the filter when you want to see a new franchise.

Ц

Working with Audits

Understanding audits	
How audits appear to end users	
How to create an audit record	
Creating an audit attached to a Management Log	200
How to complete an audit on desktop	203
How to work with attachments that are not images	
How to work with the audit resource file	
Data in the audit resource file	212
How data in each audit resource column is displayed	

Understanding audits

Audits are a useful management tool to ensure repeatable processes and quality outcomes are achieved.

Audits are typically used to

- » Collect evidence at defined stages in a job
- » Document business improvement initiatives

Audits allow you to ask a standard set of questions and a range of type of answers

- » Binary answers: Yes or No | Pass or Fail | True or False
- » Scaled answers (0-n)
- » Worded responses selected from a defined set
- » Not applicable (N/A)

Evidence for your answers can be attached, including field notes and images or photographs taken directly from your phone's camera. Follow-up actions can be set directly from the audit. When the audit is complete, the system can optionally calculate a score.

How audits appear to end users

When a user is completing an audit, there are a series of questions that are asked in a regular order.

» Questions can be grouped by tabs.

• * ®	All 💌 🔍 Search Sales	force		*• 🖶 ? 🌣 🖡 🐻				
Operations Manag	Home Chatter Accounts \lor	Contacts 🗸 Contracts 🗸	Management Logs 🗸 Invoices	s ∨ * ∨ × More▼ 🖋				
Audit Number Type Audit-0037 Testing	Organiser Fran Brendan Green FCS	chise Ringwood		Cancel Submit				
1. Core Values 2. Growth								
People								
1. Are the Core Values displayed and visible to team members and clients at all times?								
	YES		NO					
▲ Upload Files	Or drop files	Add Action		🛃 Add Note				

» Each tab can show multiple pages of questions. Progress is shown on a progress bar.

•••®	All 🔻 🔍 Search Sa	llesforce		* -	🗄 ? 🌣 🖡 🐻
•••• Operations Manag Home	Chatter Accounts	🗸 Contacts 🗸	Contracts 🗸 Management Log	s 🗸 Invoices 🗸 *	∨ × More▼ 🖋
Audit Number Type C Audit-0037 Testing E	Drganiser Fi Brendan Green Fi	ranchise CS Ringwood	ANNO <i>NIA DISTOTICE</i> N	E(())	Cancel Submit
1. Core Values 2. Growth					
0		0			•
	P	erformance	anagement		
7. Are Performance Management to	ools implemented and	d utilised?			
YE	S			NO	
	op files	Ĭ	Add Action	🛃 Add N	lote

» One or more questions can display on each page.

All 💌 🔍 Search Salesforce	* 🖬 ? 🌣 🖡 👼
Operations Manag Home Chatter Accounts V Contacts	✓ Contracts ∨ Management Logs ∨ Invoices ∨ * ∨ × More▼ ✓
Audit Number Type Organiser Franchise Audit-0037 Testing Brendan Green FCS Ringwood	Cancel Submit
1. Core Values 2. Growth	
0	••
Human	Resources
4. Is there an emergency contact on file for all employees?	
YES	NO
	Add Action
5. Is there a procedure in place for internal complaints including bullyin	g and harassment claims?
YES	NO
	Add Action
6. Are the current minimum wages and approved allowances on file and	d updated as required?
YES	NO
1 Upload Files Or drop files	Add Action
Previous	Next

The user can provide evidence for answers by recording notes or uploading files, images and photographs.

All 💌 🔍 Search Salesforce	★ 🖬 ? 🌣 🖡 🐻
Cont	acts ∨ Contracts ∨ Management Logs ∨ Invoices ∨ * ∨ × More ♥ 🖋
Audit Number Type Organiser Franchise Audit-0037 Testing Brendan Green FCS Ringwo	od Cancel Submit
1. Core Values 2. Growth	
0	•
Hu	man Resources
4. Is there an emergency contact on file for all employees?	
YES	NO
the second	Add Action
5. Is there a procedure in place for internal complaints including	oullying and harassment claims?
YES	NO
1 Upload Files Or drop files	Add Action
6. Are the current minimum wages and approved allowances on t	ile and updated as required?
YES	NO
	Add Action
Previous	Next

» Actions arising from the observation can be created.

All 🔻 🔍 Search Salesforce	★▼ 🗄 ? 🌣 🐥 👼
•••• Operations Manag Home Chatter Accounts V Com	ttacts ∨ Contracts ∨ Management Logs ∨ Invoices ∨ • ∨ × More▼
Audit Number Type Organiser Franchise Audit-0037 Testing Brendan Green FCS Ringw	rood
1. Core Values 2. Growth	
0	•
Hu	iman Resources
4. Is there an emergency contact on file for all employees?	
YES	NO
1 Upload Files Or drop files	The Add Action
5. Is there a procedure in place for internal complaints including	bullying and harassment claims?
YES	NO
1 Upload Files Or drop files	The Add Action
6. Are the current minimum wages and approved allowances on	file and updated as required?
YES	NO
	Add Action
Previous	Next

» When complete, the user submits the audit.

• • •	All 💌	Q Search Sales	force				↓ • • • • •	x 🔹 💿
Operations Ma	nag Home Cha	ter Accounts 🗸	Contacts 🗸	Contracts 🗸	Management Logs 🗸	Invoices 🗸	* ∨ × More	•
Audit Number Audit-0037	Type Organise Testing Brenda	r Fran n Green FCS	^{chise} Ringwood				Cancel	Submit
1. Core Values 2. Grov	vth					_		
0			0				(C
			Techno	ology				
10. What technolo	ogy solutions are in plac	e? And what are th	ne strengths ar	nd weaknesses	of each system?			
	YES					NO		
1	Upload Files Or drop files		Ĩ	Add Action		₽⁄	Add Note	
11. Are all techno	logy systems integrated	and working as ar	end to end sy	vstem?				
	YES					NO		
	Upload Files Or drop files			Add Action		₽́2	Add Note	
Previous]

How to create an audit record

Audits can be attached to a range of records. It is often attached to a Job when producing evidence of compliance at different stages in a job.

Creating an audit requires an Audits User permission. If you need to complete audits and don't have access to the **Audits** section shown in the procedure below, speak to your system administrator.

Creating an audit attached to a Management Log

To create a new audit record

ื่อ	All 💌	Q Search Management Logs and more	re ★▼ 🖶 ? 🐥 🧑
Operations Manag	Home (Chatter Accounts 🗸 Contacts 🗸	Contracts ∨ Management Logs ∨ * ∨ × More ▼ ,
Management Log LOG-00004			+ Follow Edit Clone Delete
ecord Type Organi usiness Review 🔂 Br	ser endan Gre	Business Review Completed By	Start End 15/10/2018 12:00 PM 15/10/2018 1:00 PM
Details Related			Activity Chatter
Log Number LOG-00004		Owner 👸 Brendan Green	£
Status 🕦 Pending		Franchise FCS Ringwood	Create new Add
Start Start 15/10/2018 12:00 PM		Business Review Completed By 🕚	
End 🚺 15/10/2018 1:00 PM		Next Business Review Date 🕕	Refresh Expand All
Organiser () Brendan Green			Next Steps More Steps

1. From the **Management Log**, select the **Related** tab.

2. From the Audits section, press New.

• - P	All 🔻 🔍 Sea	rch Management Logs a	nd more		* ? 🐻
Operations Manag +	lome Chatter /	Accounts 🗸 Contac	ts 🗸 Contracts	✓ Management Logs ∨	* ∨ × More▼ 🖋
LOG-00004				+ Follow	Edit Clone Delete
Record Type Organiser Business Review organiser	Busi	ness Review Completed B	/ Start 15/10/2	End 018 12:00 PM 15/:	10/2018 1:00 PM
Details Related				Activity Chatt	er
🛃 Audits (0)			New	Email	
Attendees (0)			New	Create new	Add

The New Audit dialog box appears.

3. Select the Type, enter the Audit Start Date, and press New.

	New	Audit		
Information				
Audit Name		Status New		•
Management Log BLOG-00004	2 ×	Audit Start Date Date 15/10/2018	Time	0
_{Type} Y Management Review	٣	Audit Closed Date Date	Time	0
Job Search Jobs	Q			
System Information				
Currency AUD - Australian Dollar	•	Owner Brendan Green		
			Cancel Save & M	lew Save

4. The Audit record is now created. To open the audit, click on Audit Name.

•-®	All 👻 🔍 Search M	anagement Logs and	more		*• 🖬 ? 🖡 🐻
Operations Manag	Home Chatter Accou	ints 🗸 Contacts	 ✓ Contracts 	✓ Management Logs √	✓ * ∨ × More ▼
Management Log LOG-00004	<u>en al constant an </u>			+ Follow	Edit Clone Delete
Record Type Organiser Business Review 🔂 Brenda	Business R an Gre	Review Completed By	Start 15/10/2	En 018 12:00 PM 15	d 5/10/2018 1:00 PM
Details Related				Activity Cha	tter
🗲 Audits (1)			New	Email	
AUDIT NAME AUDIT START	DATE AUDIT CLOSED D	STATUS		Create annu	
Audit-0028 15/10/2018 :	12:0	New		Create new	Add
	View All			Filters: All tin	ne • All activities • All types T

How to complete an audit on desktop

To complete an audit on a desktop

1. From the Audit page, press Start Audit.

• * ®	All 🔻	Q Search Salesforce		*• 🖬 ? 🐥 🐻
Operations Manag Home	Chatter	Accounts V Contacts V Contracts V	Managem	nent Logs 🗸 Invoices 🗸 Payments 🗸 More 🕷 🖋
Audit Audit-0029				Start Audit Submit for Approval Edit 🖵
Related Details				Activity
Audit Name Audit-0029		Status New	1	Filters: All time • All activities • All types
Management Log LOG-00004		Audit Start Date 15/10/2018 3:38 PM	1	Refresh Expand All
Type Management Review		Audit Closed Date	1	Next Steps More Steps No next steps. To get things moving, add a task or set up a
dof				Past Activities
Currency AUD - Australian Dollar		Last Modified By of Brendan Green, 15/10/2018 2:30 PM		No past activity. Past meetings and tasks marked as done show up here.
Created By Brendan Green, 15/10/2018 1:36 PM		Owner 📅 Brendan Green	£	Load More Past Activities

2. On any given page, answer each question.

• • ®	All 💌 🔍 Search Sales	force		*• 🖬 ? 🌲 🐻
Operations Manag	Home Chatter Accounts	✓ Contacts ✓ Contracts ✓	Management Logs 🗸 🗸	* 🗸 🗙 More 💌 🖋
Audit Number Type Audit-0029 Testing	Organiser Brendan Green	Franchise FCS Ringwood		Cancel Submit
1. Core Values 2. Growth				
		People		
1. Are staff recognised and re	ewarded for practicing the	core vales?	NO	
1 Upload Files	Or drop files	Add Action	NU E	Add Note
2. Are the Core Values displa	ayed and visible to team m	embers and clients at all times?		
	YES	2	NO	
1. Upload Files	Or drop files	Add Action	Ð	Add Note
3. Do all team members prac	ctice core values via everyc	day activities?		
	YES	8	NO	
1 Upload Files	Or drop files	Add Action	æ	Add Note
				Next

3. When you are finished with a page, press **Next**.

• - ®	All 👻 🔍 Search Salesf	orce		*• 🖶 ? 🜲 🐻
Operations Manag	Home Chatter Accounts	✓ Contacts ✓ Contracts ✓	Management Logs 🗸 🗸	* 🗸 X More 🕶 🍠
Audit Number Type Audit-0029 Testing	Organiser Brendan Green	Franchise FCS Ringwood		Cancel Submit
1. Core Values 2. Growth				
		People		
1. Are staff recognised and r	ewarded for practicing the	core vales?		
,	YES		NO	
1. Upload Files	Or drop files	Add Action	E /	Add Note
2. Are the Core Values displa	ayed and visible to team me	embers and clients at all times?		
	YES		NO	
1. Upload Files	Or drop files	Add Action	E	Add Note
3. Do all team members pra	ctice core values via everyd	ay activities?		
	YES		NO	
1 Upload Files	Or drop files	Add Action		Add Note
				Next

4. Notice the progress to the next tab. Answer each question, then press Next.

	All Q Search Salesf	iorce	Management lags	🗶 🗄 ? 🌲 🐻	
Audit Number Type Audit-0029 Testing	Organiser Brendan Green	Franchise FCS Ringwood		Cancel Submit	
1. Core Values 2. Growth				S7725337770111721100000000	
0		•		•	
	F	luman Resources			
4. Is there a procedure in pl	ace for internal complaints	including bullying and hara	ssment claims?		
	YES	- ถ้ ้	NO		
1. Upload Files	Or drop files	Add Action		🛃 Add Note	
5. Is there an emergency co	ntact on file for all employe	ees?			
	YES	2	NO		
▲ Upload Files	Or drop files	Add Action		🛃 Add Note	
6. Are the current minimum wages and approved allowances on file and updated as required?					
	YES	8	NO		
1 Upload Files	Or drop files	Add Action		🔁 Add Note	
Previous				Next	

Remember to Add Notes, Upload Files or Add Actions to fully document any evidence useful for the purposes of your audit.

5. Notice the progress through the sections of the current audit tab.

● -₩	All 🔻 🔍 Search Salesf	orce				
Operations Manag	Home Chatter Accounts	✓ Contacts ✓ Contracts ✓	Management Logs 🗸 ု 🗸	X More V		
Audit Number Type Audit-0029 Testing	Organiser Brendan Green	Franchise FCS Ringwood		Cancel Submit		
1. Core Values 2. Growth						
©		O		•		
	Performance Management					
7. Does the office further en	hance the internal client ex	perience? If so how?				
	YES		NO			
1 Upload Files	Or drop files	Add Action	🛃 Add N	ote		
8. Are Performance Manage	ment tools implemented a	nd utilised?				
	YES		NO			
仕 Upload Files	Or drop files	Add Action	🛃 Add N	ote		
9. Do all team members take pride in their appearance and make every effort to represent the brand to the highest level?						
	YES		NO			
1 Upload Files	Or drop files	Add Action	🛃 Add N	ote		
Previous				Next		

6. Continue clicking **Next** until questions in all sections of all tabs are complete.

The **Next** button is not displayed on the last page of the audit.

7. When you have answered all questions and entered all notes, attachments and actions, press **Submit**.

•-®	All 👻 🔍 Search Salesford	ce	* -	E ? 单 🐻	
Operations Manag	Home Chatter Accounts	Contacts V Contracts V	Management Logs 🗸 🔹 🗸	× More 🗸 🖌	
Audit Number Type Audit-0029 Testing	Organiser Fr Brendan Green Fi	ranchise CS Ringwood	C	Cancel Submit	
1. Core Values 2. Growth					
		•••••		—o	
Technology					
10. Are all technology systems integrated and working as an end to end system?					
	YES		NO		
1 Upload Files	Or drop files	Add Action	E Add No	te	
11. What technology solutions are in place? And what are the strengths and weaknesses of each system?					
	YES		NO		
	Or drop files	Add Action	🛃 Add No	te	
Previous					

8. Consider whether you have answered all questions and entered all necessary attachments or actions. When you are sure, press **Submit**.

Submi	t Audit	
u are about to submit the audit. Please estions and necessary attachments and	make sure you have answered all /or actions.	
	Cancel Submit	
ne Audit is now com	pleted.	
อ	All 💌 🔍 Search Salesforce	★▼ = ? + (5
Operations Manag Home	Chatter Accounts > Contacts > Contracts >	Management Logs V Invoices V Payments V More V
Related Details		Activity
Audit Name		
Audit-0029	Completed	Filters: All time • All activities • All types
Audit-0029 Management Log LOG-00004	Completed Audit Start Date 15/10/2018 3:38 PM	Filters: All time • All activities • All types T
Audit-0029 Management Log LOG-00004 Type Management Review	Audit Start Date 15/10/2018 3:38 PM Audit Closed Date 16/10/2018 2:43 PM	Filters: All time • All activities • All types Refresh Expand All Next Steps More Steps No next steps. To get things moving, add a task or set up a meetine.
Audit-0029 Management Log LOG-00004 Type Management Review	Audit Start Date 15/10/2018 3:38 PM Audit Closed Date 16/10/2018 2:43 PM	Filters: All time • All activities • All types Refresh Expand All Next Steps No next steps. To get things moving, add a task or set up a meeting. Past Activities
Audit-0029 Management Log LOG-00004 Type Management Review Job Currency AUD - Australian Dollar	Last Modified By	Filters: All time • All activities • All types Refresh Expand All Next Steps More Steps No next steps. To get things moving, add a task or set up a meeting. Past Activities No past activity. Past meetings and tasks marked as done show up here.

9.

How to work with attachments that are not images

Attachments that are images can be viewed by clicking the images link. Clicking the image link allows you to view the image. You have the option to delete the image should you choose to do so.

* ®	All 👻 🔍 Search Salesfo	rce		*• 🖬 ? 🌣 单 🐻
Operations Manag Hor	ne Chatter Accounts 🗸	Contacts 🗸 Contracts 🗸	Management Logs 🗸 Invo	ices 🗸 🔹 🗸 More 🖉 💉
Audit Number Type Audit-0029 Testing	Organiser Franc Brendan Green FCS I	hise Ringwood		Cancel Submit
1. Core Values 2. Growth				
0		•		•
		Human Resources		
4. Is there an emergency contact	t on file for all employees?			
	YES		NO	
1 Upload Files Or c	Irop files 2 images	Add Acti	on	🔁 Add Note
5. Is there a procedure in place f	or internal complaints inclu	ding bullying and harassme	nt claims?	
	YES		NO	
1 Upload Files O	r drop files	Add Action		🛃 Add Note
6. Are the current minimum wag	es and approved allowance	s on file and updated as req	uired?	
	YES		NO	
	drop files	Add Action		🛃 Add Note
Previous				Next

Attachments that are not images are managed via attachments to the audit questions.
To locate non-image attachments

1. From the Audit record, selected Related.

Ð	All 👻	Q Search Salesforce		★- 🗄 ? ಭ 뵺 🤅
Operations Manag	Home Chatter	Accounts 🗸 Contacts 🗸 Contra	acts 🗸 Manag	ement Logs ∨ Invoices ∨ * ∨ X More▼
Audit Audit-0029				Start Audit Submit for Approval Edit
Related Details	577/1 -).I.C.			Activity
Audit Name Audit-0029		Status Completed	1	Filters: All time • All activities • All types
Management Log LOG-00004		Audit Start Date 15/10/2018 3:38 PM	1	Refresh Expand
Type Testing		Audit Closed Date 16/10/2018 2:43 PM	1	Next Steps More Steps
Job				no next steps. To get things moving, and a task of set up meeting. Past Activities
Currency AUD - Australian Dollar		Last Modified By	AM	No past activity. Past meetings and tasks marked as done show up here.
Created By	36 PM	Owner Brendan Green	£	Load More Past Activities

2. Select an Audit Item.

	CHSIC///:S	MEA NIMPANC DISTO		NIIVIIIA PEUTO	THE SUCT SHOW TO DESCRIPTION
Audit Audit-0029					Start Audit Submit for Approval Edit
telated Det	ails		57/// M(C)		Activity
🔑 Audit Items (6	5+)			New	Filters: All time • All activities • All types
AUDIT ITEM NAME	DISPLAY ORDER	DESCRIPTION	FINDING		Refresh Expa
AIN-0201	1	Are the Core Values dis	YES		Next Steps More Steps
AIN-0202	2	Do all team members	YES		No next steps. To get things moving, add a task or set
AIN-0203	0	Are staff recognised an	YES		meeting.
AIN-0207	4	Is there an emergency	YES		Past Activities
AIN-0209	5	Is there a procedure in	YES	•	No past activity. Past meetings and tasks marked as do
AIN-0208	6	Are the current minim	YES		show up here.

3. Now select the Audit Item's Related tab.

P	All 👻	Q Search Salesforce	*• 🗄 ? 🅸 单 🌔
Operations Manag	Home Chatter	Accounts 🗸 Contacts 🗸 Contracts 🗸 Ma	inagement Logs \lor Invoices \lor * \lor X More $ ilde{\bullet}$
Audit Item AIN-0207		an o hai - 21 OA O 7772 di di canonine - 24 O	Edit Delete Clone
Related Details	52/11 M.C.	o ne anta san oneo ne anta	Activity
Audit Item Name AIN-0207		Currency AUD - Australian Dollar	Filters: All time • All activities • All types
Audit Audit-0029		Finding YES	Refresh Expand A
Display Order 4		Description Is there an emergency contact on file for all employees?	Next Steps More Steps No next steps. To get things moving, add a task or set up a meeting
Category 2. Growth		Notes	Past Activities
Section Human Resources			No past activity. Past meetings and tasks marked as done show up here.
Created By	3:36 PM	Last Modified By	Load More Past Activities

4. In the Notes & Attachments section select the View All link.

All 👻 Q Search Salesforce	* 🖬 ? 🌣 🖡 🐻
Operations Manag Home Chatter Accounts V Contacts V Contracts V Manage	ement Logs 🗸 Invoices 🤟 📩 🧹 X More 💌 💉
Audit Item AIN-0207	Edit Delete Clone
Related Details	Activity
Upload Files	Filters: All time • All activities • All types
Employee-Emergency-Contact-Form-Signed 19/11/2018 · 224KB · png	Next Steps More Steps
19/11/2018 - 32KB - pdf	No next steps. To get things moving, add a task or set up a meeting.
View All	Past Activities

5. You can now view all the files attached to the question.

•		A	JI 🔻 🛛	Search Sa	alesfo	orce						?‡	. 🔊
***	Operations Manag	Home	Chatter	Accounts	\sim	Contacts 🗸	Contracts 🗸	Management Lo	gs 🗸	Invoices	× * ×	× More	
Audit Not 2 item	Items > AIN-0207 es & Attachments ns • Sorted by Last Modified • Updat	ed a few seco	onds ago	9.000 (7) <i>(746</i> -2464)			317 - XX	9/////(<i>2</i>)		Upload \$	l Files
	TITLE				\sim	OWNER	~	LAST MODIFIED		~	SIZE	``	/
1	Employee-Emergency	-Contact-For	m-Signed			Loryn Jenkins		19/11/2018 6:12	٩M		224KB		
2	Employee-Emergency	-Contact-For	m			Loryn Jenkins		19/11/2018 6:09	٩M		32KB		

To edit any of the attachments

1. Select from the attachment's **Edit** menu.

• - ®		All 👻 🔍 Search Sa	lesfo	rce			2	🖪 ? 🌣 🌲 🐻
	Operations Manag Home	Chatter Accounts	~	Contacts 🗸	Contracts 🗸	Management Logs	∽ Invoices ∽ *	∨ × More▼ 🖋
Audit Not 2 iten	: Items > AIN-0207 ces & Attachments ns - Sorted by Last Modified - Updated 2 minu	tes ago				1787 <i>01112</i> 4001		Upload Files \$\$ • C
	TITLE		\sim	OWNER	\sim	LAST MODIFIED \blacklozenge	✓ SIZE	~
1	Employee-Emergency-Contact-F	Form-Signed		Loryn Jenkins		19/11/2018 6:12 AM	224KB	
2	Employee-Emergency-Contact-F	form		Loryn Jenkins		19/11/2018 6:09 AM	32KB	
								Download
								Share
								Public Link
								View File Details
								Upload New Version
								Edit File Details
								Delete

How to work with the audit resource file

To obtain the Audit Resource.csv file, talk to your system administrator.

If you use a spreadsheet to edit the Audit_Resource.csv file, remember to export the changes back into CSV format before import into Salesforce.

Data in the audit resource file

Column Name	Description	Example
Туре	Determines which audit type the current ques- tion belongs to. To use a new audit type, speak with your system administrator.	General
Display_ Orderc	Numeric value describing the display order of each question within a section.	1
Description c	The question displayed to the user. Can be formatted as plain text or using HTML.	All employees pos- sess current health and safety cer- tificates?
Guidance_ Notesc	Description of the evaluation. Can be format- ted as plain text or using HTML.	Check: Current health and safety cert is filed for each employee.
Possible_ Findingsc	A pipe-delimited string describing the set of possible answers. Each sub-string is displayed on its own button. See below for the syntax for this column.	N/A No Yes
Pass_Find- ingc	Optional criteria to determine whether this find- ing is a pass or fail. Questions pass by default.	8
Categoryc	Determines the name of the tab on which the question is displayed. All questions belonging to a category are displayed on the same tab. Tabs appear in alphabetical order.	People

Column Name	Description	Example				
Sectionc	Determines the name of the section for each question. All questions belonging to a section are displayed on the same page. Sections are presented in alphabetical order.					
Maximum_ Scorec	Iaximum_ bcorecOptional column used for scoring. Specifies the maximum score that can be attributed to this question. Must be a positive number.					
Scoring_Dir- ectionc	Optional column used for scoring. Determines whether the question starts from a zero-value and adds scores based on your answers, or whether it starts from the Maximum_Score and subtracts scores based on the answer.	DOWN				
Weightingc	Numeric value against which the finding score is multiplied.	5				
Show_Notes_ _c	Determines whether notes are displayed by default.	TRUE				
Cont	rol the order of the tabs, begin the Category name witl	h a number.				
Content within the Category_c and Section_c columns cannot contain com- mas. If you need to include a separator, use a dash instead of a comma.						
If you ad audit typ resourc	If you add a new Type to the spreadsheet, you will need to configure a new audit type (How to configure new audit types) before updating the audit resource file into Salesforce.					

Syntax for Possible Findings column

Acceptable syntax for the Possible Findings column is as follows.

Syntax	Example	Description
Binary responses	{ N/A } Fail Pass { NA } False True { NA } No Yes	System recognizes three types of Bin- ary Response, each of which can sup- port an optional Not Applicable (N/A or NA is equally acceptable).

Syntax	Example	Description
Scaled responses	Slider:% Slider:1	Sliders provides a way to select a scaled, numeric response. The slider will produce a slider control whose increments are defined by the value after the colon and whose range is defined by the Maximum_Score. With the first slider, the slider range is from 0 to 1.0 incrementing by 0.01. The slider value is multiplied by Max- imum_Score to obtain the slider's score
		In second example, when Maximum_ Score is 10, then the slider will contain ten increments (0, 1, 2 9, 10), the increment being defined by the num- ber following the colon.
Numeric responses	{NA }1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10 {N/A }5 4 3 2 1	With numeric scales, the labels rep- resent values. In all cases, Maximum_Score must be given as the value of the greatest num- ber.
Custom responses	{N/A }Low=1 Below Aver- age=2 Average=3 Above Aver- age=4 Excellent=5	Arbitrary named responses generate a button set with each response described on the button label. When scoring is used, the number on the right-hand-side represents the score.

In all examples, an NA response removes the question from score calculation.

Score calculations

Here are some examples as to how the score calculations work on individual questions.

Possible Findings	Maximum Score	Score Dir- ection	Description	Comments
N/A False True	10	UP	True will score 10 False will score 0 N/A excludes question from scoring	Score Dir- ection has no effect on binary responses.
N/A 1 2 3 4 5	5	UP	1 will score 2 will score 2 3 will score 3 4 will score 4 5 will score 5 N/A excludes question from scoring	Score will always be the value of the label. Maximum Score will generally be set to being equal to the greatest label value.
N/A Low- w=1 Average=3 Excellent=5	5	UP	Low will score 1 Average will score 3 Excellent will score 5 N/A excludes question from scoring	Score will always be the value of the label. Maximum Score will generally be set to being equal to the greatest label value.

Possible Findings	Maximum Score	Score Dir- ection	Description	Comments			
Slider:%	100	UP	The score will be the selected value.	Slider incre- ments by 0.01, which is multiplied by the Max- imum_ Score to obtain the score value.			
Slider:2	10	UP	Slider pos- itions 0, 2, 4, 6, 8, 10 will be gen- erated. The score will consist of the selected value.	Slider value (the num- ber fol- lowing the colon) sets the incre- ment. Max- imum_ Score sets the range.			
Text			Finding will consist of an open text field.	Text find- ings are not scored.			

When all calculations are finished, system reports on the score relative to the maximum possible score. Not applicable questions are not included in the maximum possible score.

How data in each audit resource column is displayed

The next two images show how the example above maps to the screen.

Information Audit Name Status Saach Managament Logs.					New A	Audit: Gene	eral								
Audit Name Audit Name Search Management Logs. Ver Ver Ver Ver Ver Ver Ver Ver	Info	ormation													
New Search Management Logs Nucli Closed Date None	Aud	it Name				Status									
Munagement Logs. Det The None						New				•					
Search Management Logs Date Time None	Mana	agement l og				Audit Sta	art Date								
Type None	Se	arch Management Lo	ogs		(Q Date		Time	9						
Audit Closed Date Date The Over Over Audit Closed Date District Closed Date								 		0					
Type None- Intermet In															
Volte Cereal System Information Currery AUD - Australian Dollar Operations Manag, Home Chatter Audit Number Operations Manag, Home Cancel Substitution Audit Number Operations Manag, Home Cancel Substitution Audit Number Operations Manag, Home Chatter Accounts Jobs Jobs Stafety Centeral Substitution Operations Manag, Home Chatter Accounts Jobs Jobs Audit Number Vppe Organiser Franchise Cancel Submit Audit Oblic Concel Submit Concel Submit Concel Submit Concel Concel Submit Concel Concel <td< td=""><td>Туре</td><td>None</td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td>Audit Cle</td><td>osed Date</td><td>Time</td><td>2</td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td></td<>	Туре	None				Audit Cle	osed Date	Time	2						
		None						#	-	0					
General JN 00102 System Information Currency AUD - Australian Dollar Currency AUD - Australian Dollar Currency AUD - Australian Dollar Currency Current Cu	~	None													
por System Information Currency Audr Australian Dollar Owner Audr Australian Dollar All Cancel Swe & New Swe Swe Swe Swe Swe Swe Swe Swe Swe S		General				<u> </u>									
System Information Currency AUD - Australian Dollar AUD - Australian Dollar Audit Number Type Audit Number Type Aud - Autor POSSELDED FILCEDOD AUD - Australian Dollar Audit Autor POSSELDED FILCED AUD - Aud - Autor Audit Autor POSSELDED FILCED AUD - Aud - Autor Audit Autor POSSELDED FILCED AUD - Aud - Autor Audit Autor Aud - Autor Aut	αοι														
System Information Currency Owner AUD - Australian Dollar Cancel Save 8 New Sov AUD - Australian Dollar Sove 8 New Sove AUD - Australian Dollar Sove 8 New Sove AUD - Australian Dollar Sove 8 New Sove Audit Number Type Organiser Pranchise Cancel Submit Audit Number Type Organiser Pranchise Cancel Submit Sope Organiser Pranchise Cancel Submit Prestore No N/A Cancel Submit Cancel Submi	1	JN-00102			×	<									
System Information Currency Owner AUD - Australian Dollar Audit- Operations Manag Home Chatter Accounts & Jobs & Job Offers & Job Schedule Invoices & IV & More Audit-Audit-0038 Audit-0038 Audit-0038 AUD - Australian Audit-O38 AUD - Australian Audit-O38 Audit-O38 AUD - Australian Audit-O38 AUD AUD AUD AUD AUD AUD AUD AU															
Currency Owner AUD - Australian Dollar Loryn Jenkins Cancel Save & New Save & New Save Operations Manag Home Chatter Accounts v Jobb v Jobb Schedule Invoices v VX Audit Number Type Organiser Franchise Audit Number Type Organiser Franchise Cancel Submit Operations Manag Home Chatter Accounts v Jobb v Jobb Schedule Invoices v VX Audit Number Type Organiser Franchise Cancel Submit Operations Manag Home Chatter Audit Number Type Organiser Franchise Cancel Submit Operations Manag Providue Organiser Franchise Cancel Submit Operations Marce Submit Operations Ves No Na Ordrop files Yes No Na Operations Ordrop files <td>Syst</td> <td>tem Information</td> <td></td>	Syst	tem Information													
AUD - Australian Dollar	Curre	ency				Owner									
Cancel Save & New Save All Search Salesforce Operations Manag Home Chatter Accounts Jobb Jobb Organiser Pranchise Cancel Submit Audit Number Type Organiser Pranchise Cancel Submit Cancel Submit Audit Number Type Organiser Pranchise Cancel Submit Opter Organiser Pranchise Organiser </td <td>AL</td> <td>JD - Australian Dollar</td> <td></td> <td></td> <td></td> <td>Loryn J</td> <td>enkins</td> <td></td> <td></td> <td></td> <td></td> <td></td> <td></td> <td></td> <td></td>	AL	JD - Australian Dollar				Loryn J	enkins								
All Cearch Salesforce Operations Manag Home Chatter Accounts Jobs Job Offers Job Schedule Invoices VINT More Audit Number Type Organiser Franchise															
Operations Manag Home Chatter Accounts Jobs Jobs Job Offers Job Schedule Invoices V More Audit Number Audit Number Type Organiser Franchise Cancel Submit Operations Manag Audit Number Type Organiser Franchise Cancel Submit Operations Manag Audit Number Type Organiser Franchise Cancel Submit Operations Manag Audit Number Type Organiser Franchise Cancel Submit Operations Manag Audit Number Type Organiser Franchise Cancel Submit Operations Manag Audit Number Type Organiser Franchise Cancel Submit Operations Manag Audit Number Type Organiser Franchise Cancel Submit Operations Manag Operations Manag Health & Safety Section Description Operation Health & Safety Ves No N/A Description N/A Yes No N/A More More More Previous	3			All 💌	Q S	Search Salesforce	ē					* -		? 🏚	. (?
Audit Number Type Audit-0018					CI			1.1.07			•				
Audit Number Type Organiser Franchise Cancel Submit ople Cencel Submit ople Cencel Submit Health & Safety Section Health & Safety Section Yes No Previous Or drop files Previous No		Operations Wana	ag	Home	Chatter	Accounts 🗸	v Jobs 🗸	Job Offer	s 🗸 Job Si	chedule	Invoices		~ ×	More	-
ople Cellegory Health & Safety Section Health & Safety Description Yes No N/A Yes No N/A Previous		udit Number Audit-0018	Type General	(Organiser	Franchis	se						Cancel	Sut	omit
Health & Safety Health & Safety Section Description Yes No N/A Type Add Action Previous Previous	ople	-	-0		Ð	T TY	//////////////////////////////////////						<i>2007 -</i> Ashida		
Health & Safety Section 4. All employees possess current health and safety certificates? Description Yes No N/A ① Upload Files Or drop files … Add Action Possible Finctings		o			_	_	-0-							-	
4. All employees possess current health and safety certificates? Description Yes No N/A ① Upload Files Or drop files Yes N/A Previous Add Action Possible Fincings						H	ealth & Sa	afety 🧹					n		
Yes No N/A ① Upload Files Or drop files Yes No	4.	All employees po	ossess cur	rrent hea	alth and	safety certific	ates?			æ	<u>ub</u>	JO	D		
Lupload Files Or drop files Cr drop files Cr drop files Cr drop files Previous			Yes				No			_	_	N/A	_		
Previous		1 Uplos	ad Files	Or drop f	files		ĭ≡	Add Action	POS			Fili	<u>elt</u>	Ø	3

$\mathbf{0}$ Y

Working with Expenses

Understanding expenses	 220
How to enter an expense	 221

Understanding expenses

Expenses enable you to include charges on franchisee invoices that are additional to standard contract fees. You can include one off charges or have a charge be invoiced in a series of installments.

When you enter an expense, the expense is converted into one or more expense lines.

- When you enter an expense with a single installment, it is converted into a single expense line.
- When you enter an expense with multiple installments, it is converted into one expense line per installment. The effective date of the installments are spread across subsequent months.

Expense lines are invoiced in the first invoice run configured to charge expenses and whose period includes the expense line's Due Date.

Expenses can really lower the communications overhead between the management team and the finance team.

For example, if the management team agrees to run additional advertising in a territory, they can enter the expense as a series of installments. These expenses will automatically be picked up by the invoice run. It avoids having to communicate special payment information to the finance team via email at the beginning or the end of the installments.

How to enter an expense

To create a new expense

1. Using the Salesforce menu, locate the **Expenses** tab.



Recently Viewed expenses are displayed.

2. Press New.

•-®		re						*•	2?	÷ (5						
***	Operations Manag	Home Chatter	Accoun	s 🗸	Contacts	~ 0	Contracts	~	Management Logs	~	Invoices 🗸	Expenses	∽ More	•	de la constante	ø
ق <u>آ</u> ة 2 item	Expenses Recently Viewed 🗢											\$ 4 ~			New C T	
	EXPENSE NUMBER \checkmark	SUMMARY	V TYPI		~	AMOU	INT INC TA	x v	TAX EXEMPT	\sim	INVOICED	to da 🗸	FRANCHIS	-	\sim	
1	EXP-000043	New Mobile Phone	Mob	le Hands	et	\$859.0	00				\$0.00		FCS Bondi B	leach	•	
2	EXP-000042	Additional Local A	Adve	rtising		\$355.0	00				\$355.00		FCS Bondi B	leach	•	

The New Expense dialog box appears.

3. Enter the expense description into the Summary field. This will appear on the franchisee invoice.

IN	ew Expense	
Information		
Expense Number	Owner OPS Finance Manager	
* Summary	* Franchise	
Mobile handset	Search Accounts	Q
*Туре	Supplier	
None	▼ Search Accounts	Q
* Date	* Instalments	
	m 1	
*Amount Inc Tax		
Tax Exempt		
System Information		
Currency		
Australian Dollar	•	
	Cancel Sa	ve & New Sav

4. Select the Franchise to which the expense will be invoiced.

New Expense

Expense Number		Owner OPS Finance Manager
* Summary		* Franchise
Mobile handset		Coo
* Туре		9 "Coo" in Accounts
None	•	ECS Coogee
Date		444333219
		+ New Account
Amount Inc Tax		
Tax Exempt		
System Information		
Currency		
Australian Dollar	•	

5. Select the expense Type.

mormation			
Expense Number		Owner OPS Finance Manager	
Summary		* Franchise	
Mobile handset		FCS Coogee	×
Туре		Supplier	
Mobile Handset	•	Search Accounts	Q
None		* Instalments	
Advertising		1	
Business Cards			
Mobile Bill Charges			
✓ Mobile Handset			
Vehicle Signage			
Other			
Australian Dollar	•		

6. Enter the Date the expense was incurred.

4

7. Choose the number of installments in which this expense will be paid.

Installments are payable on subsequent months.

8. Enter the **Amount Inc Tax**, then press **Save**.

	New E	xpense	
nformation			
Expense Number		Owner OPS Finance Manager	
Summary		* Franchise	
Mobile handset		FCS Coogee	×
Туре		Supplier	
Mobile Handset	•	Search Accounts	Q
Date		* Instalments	
4/05/2018	t	2	
Amount Inc Tax			
850.00			
Fax Exempt			
ystem Information			
Currency			
Australian Dollar	•		
		Cancel	IO & NOW
		Cancel 3d	e a new

Operations Management displays the newly created **Expense** record.

•-a		Q Searc	ch Expenses and	more			1		? • (0
Operations Manag	Home Chatter	Accounts 🗸	Contacts 🗸	Contracts 🗸	Management Logs	✓ Invoices ✓	Expenses 🗸	More 🔻		a series
Mobile handset							Edit	Delete C	lone	•
Type Amount Mobile Handset \$850.0	Inc Tax Date D 4/05/2	Prar	nchise 5 Coogee	Instalments 2						
DETAILS RELATED										
Expense Number EXP-000044		Owner	S Finance Mana	ager						
Summary Mobile handset		Franchise FCS Coc	ogee							
_{Type} Mobile Handset		Supplier								
Date 4/05/2018		Invoiced \$0.00	To Date							
Amount Inc Tax \$850.00		Expense \$850.00	Item Total Amour D	nt Inc Tax						
Tax Exempt		Instalmer	nts							

To see when an expense will become payable

1. From the **Expense**, select the **Related** tab.

• . ®		Q Search Expenses and n	nore			* 🖬 ? 🖡 🐻
•••• Operations Manag Home Ch	natter Accou	unts 🗸 Contacts 🗸	Contracts 🗸	Management Logs	✓ Invoices ✓	Expenses 🗸 More 🔻
Mobile handset						Edit Delete Clone 🔻
Type Amount Inc Tax E Mobile Handset \$850.00 4	Date 0/05/2018	Franchise FCS Coogee	Instalments 2			
DETAILS RELATED						
Expense Number EXP-000044		Owner	er			
Summary Mobile handset		Franchise FCS Coogee				
Type Mobile Handset		Supplier				
Date 4/05/2018		Invoiced To Date \$0.00				
Amount Inc Tax \$850.00		Expense Item Total Amount \$850.00	Inc Tax			
Tax Exempt		Instalments 2				

2. Review the expense lines.

•••		Q S	Search Expenses a	nd more			(*• 8 7	? 🖡 🐻
Operations Man	ag Home Ch	natter Accounts	✓ Contacts ·	🗸 Contracts 🗸	Management Lo	gs 🗸 Invoices 🗸	Expenses N	More 🔻	
Expense Mobile handse	et						Edit	Delete C	Clone 🔻
Type A Mobile Handset S	Amount Inc Tax E	Date 4/05/2018	Franchise FCS Coogee	Instalments 2					
DETAILS RELA	TED								
5 Expense Line It	ems (2)				New				
EXPENSE ITEM NUMBER	SUMMARY	AMOUNT INC T	AX TAX	EXEMPT					
EIN-000059	Mobile handset - 4/05/	\$425.00			•				
EIN-000060	Mobile handset - 4/06/	\$425.00			•				
		View All							

3. To see more detail, press View All.

• - ®			Q Search Expenses and more									*		? 4		
***	Operations Mana	ag Home	Chatter Ac	counts	✓ Contac	ts 🗸	Contracts	~ '	Management Logs	; ~	Invoices 🗸	Expense	s 🗸	More	•	/
٥Į٥	Expense Mobile handse	t										Ed	it	Delete	Clone	•
Type Mob	A ile Handset \$	amount Inc Tax 850.00	Date 4/05/2018		Franchise FCS Coogee		Instalment 2	ts								
DE	TAILS RELAT	TED														
٥Ī	Expense Line Ite	ems (2)							New							
E	XPENSE ITEM NUMBER	SUMMARY	AMOUI	NT INC TA	x	TAX EXE	MPT									
E	IN-000059	Mobile handset - 4)	/05/ \$425.0	00					•							
E	IN-000060	Mobile handset - 4/	06/ \$425.0	00			_		•							
			Viev	w All 🧹												

All Expense Line Items display.

• - ®				Q	Sear	ch Salesford	e								X		?	6
***	Operations Manag	Home	Chatter	Account	s 🗸	Contacts	~	Contract	s 🗸	Management Log	s v	Invoices	~	Expenses	~	More 🔻		ø
Exper Exp 2 item	nses > EXP-000044 ense Line Items ns • Updated a minute ago																Ne tot v	ew Cł
	EXPENSE ITEM NUMBER \checkmark	SUMMAR	۱Y	\sim	AMOL	JNT INC TA	х	V TAX	EXEM	рт у	DUE	DATE		V INV	OICED	1	\sim	
1	EIN-000059	Mobile ha	andset - 4/0	05/20	\$425.0	00					4/05/	2018						•
2	EIN-000060	Mobile ha	andset - 4/0	06/20	\$425.0	00					4/06/	2018						•

lf you need to	manually	edit any	of the expe	ense lines	s, select	Edit.
Operations Manag	Q Home Chatter Account	Search Salesforce	Contracts 🗸 Management	Logs 🗸 Invoices 🗸	Expenses V More	• • 6
Expenses > EXP-000044 Expense Line Items 2 items - Updated 3 minutes ago					1	New \$ • C
EXPENSE ITEM NUMBER \checkmark	SUMMARY V	AMOUNT INC TAX	✓ TAX EXEMPT	V DUE DATE	✓ INVOICED	~
1 EIN-000059	Mobile handset - 4/05/20	\$425.00		4/05/2018		
2 EIN-000060	Mobile handset - 4/06/20	\$425.00		4/06/2018		
				2		Edit

O

Working with Suppliers & Supplier Invoices

Adding a supplier	228
Creating a supplier invoice	.230

Adding a supplier

Operations Management represent suppliers as a special type of Business Account.

To add a supplier account

1. From the Accounts list page, press New.

•-®	ี ๆ	All 👻 🔍 Search Accounts	s and more		★- 🗄 ? :	¢ 🖡 🐻
***	Operations Manag	Chay Accounts 🗸 Co	ontacts 🗸 Contracts 🗸	Management Logs 🗸 Inve	pices 🗸 Payments 🗸	More 🔻 💉
13 ite	Accounts Recently Viewed ms · Sorted by Account Name · Updated a few	seconds ago		Q Search this list	₩₩ 0 1105311 New New	Import
	ACCOUNT NAME ↑	✓ ACCOUNT SITE	e 🗸 Phone	~	ACCOUNT OWNER ALIAS	~
1	Australia Master				FinMan	
2	Bayswater VIC				fmanv	
3	Dianna Ross				FranchO	
4	FCS Ringwood		0404 303	808	rfran	
5	FCS Ringwood East		0404 030	808	L	

The **New Account** dialog box appears.

2. Check that Business Account is selected, then press Next.

		New Account
Select a record type		
	\odot	Business Account
		Business
		Franchise Profile Represents a Franchise
		Individual
		Master Franchise Profile Represents a Master Franchise
		Person Account
		Cancel

3. Now complete the account creation by entering all relevant details then pressing **Save**.

4. From the Account, press the Edit button.

•- ®	All 🔻	Q Search Accounts and more	*• 🗄 ? 🌣 单 👼
Operations Manag Home	Chatte	r Accounts 🗸 Contacts 🗸 Contracts V Manageme	ent Logs 🗸 Invoices 🗸 Payments 🗸 More 🕷 💉
Account Smith's Floorworld Ringwood	A	+ Follow Edit Delete View Account Hierarchy	View Website Create New Job Supplier Invoice
Type Phone Technology Partner (03) 9879 1622		Website Account Owner www.floorworld.com.au 👸 Ringwood Franchisee 🗈	Account Site Industry
Details Related	///: 4-53		Connection Status Connect to X@f0
Account Name Smith's Floorworld Ringwood		Account Owner	Has not been set up : Disconnected
Parent Account		Franchise FCS Ringwood	Activity Chatter
Company Number 🕕		Email 🚯 ringwood@floorworld.com.au	Email
Business Number 55005946654		Phone (03) 9879 1622	
_{Type} Technology Partner		Fax (03) 9879 5267	Create new Add
Industry		Website www.floorworld.com.au	Filters: All time • All activities • All types
		Available as Supplier 🕦	Refresh Expand All Next Steps

5. Check Available as Supplier. Enter the Default Tax Rate, then press Save.

FRANCHISE CLOUD SOLUTIONS	Q Search Salesforce	* 🖬 ? 🌣 🐥 🥌
Business Manage Home Chatt	er Accounts V Jobs V Job Offers V Job Schedule	Invoices \lor Payments \lor More \blacksquare
Account Smith's Floorworld Ringwood 🖪		+ Follow Edit Delete View Account Hierarchy
* Account Name Smith's Floorworld Ringwood	Account Owner Loryn Jenkins	Log a Call New Event New Task More
Parent Account	Franchise	Recap your call Add
Search Accounts	FCS - Ringwood ×	Filters: All time • All activities • All types
Company Number	Email ringwood@floorworld.com.au	Refresh Expand All
Business Number	Phone	No next steps. To get things moving, add a task or set up a
Туре	Fax	meeting. Past Activities
None	▼ 03 9879 5267	No past activity. Past meetings and tasks marked as done show up here.
None	www.floorworld.com.au	Load More Past Activities 🔻
	Available as Supplier	
	Default Tax Rate	
✓ Address Information Car	icel Save	

The account is now available in the system as a supplier.

Creating a supplier invoice

Operations Management allows you to associate lines from a supplier invoice against a job. This allows you to track the expenses incurred by particular jobs.



You can also record purchases not intended for a job (i.e. purchases for stock). To do this, ensure the Job on the invoice line is blank.

To record a supplier invoice

1. From the Salesforce Accounts list, select the Business Accounts list view.

(FRANCHISE CLOUD SOLUTIONS	All 💌 🔍 Search Accourt	ts and more				★ ■ ?	\$ 🛊 🦱
	Operations Manag Home Chatter Accounts contacts V Contracts	s 🗸 Management Logs 🗸	Expenses \lor Invoice	s 🗸 Payments 🗸 Jobs	✓ Job Offers ✓ Cu	stomer Feedback 🗸 Te	rritories 🗸 More 🔻	/
F	Accounts FCS VIC Franchisees						New Import	Printable View
4 items	Q					Q Search this list	\$ • Ⅲ • C	/ C T
	RECENT LIST VIEWS	✓ Billing State	✓ Billing Postcode	✓ Phone	 Account Owner 	- V Owner First Name	 Owner Last Name 	~
1	All Accounts	VIC	3183	0431661077	ooffi	OPS	Head Office Manager	
2	During Assessed	VIC	3140	0411628422	Ifran	Lilydale	FranchiseOwner	•
3	Business Accounts	VIC	3140	0431661077	FO	John	Smith	
4	FCS NSW Franchisees	VIC	3134	0431661077	FO	John	Smith	
	 FCS VIC Franchisees (Pinned list) 							

2. Select the target supplier account.

	FRANCHISE		All 👻 🔍 Search A	ccounts and more				*	- 8	?‡	ب (*))
🔛 Ор	erations Manag Home Chatter Accourt	nts v Contacts v Contr	acts 🗸 Management Logs	✓ Expenses ✓ Invoices ✓	Payments 🗸 Jobs 🗸 Job C	offers 🤟 Customer Feedback	\checkmark Territories \checkmark	More	Ŧ			/
E Acc Bu	ounts siness Accounts ▼ ≉							New	Import	Print	able View	
20 items • S	orted by Account Name - Filtered by all accounts - Account Reco	ord Type - Updated a few seconds ag	•			Q. Search th	iis list	\$ *	Π.	c /	6 7	
13	Account Name 1 V	Billing State V	Billing Postcode v	Phone 13 1012	✓ Last Job Date	 Account Owner Alias Securit 	✓ Created Date 5/10/2017 5.4	2 PM			×	
14	Parallel Trades Pty Ltd	NSW	2022	(02) 9389 8988		sadmi	3/10/2017 9:4	2 AM			V	
15	Ray White Bexley	NEW	2207			kmile	12/08/2019 9:	12 AM			•	
16	Signarama St Leonards	2065				Jannis	6/10/2017 9:0	4 AM			•	
17	Smith's Floorworld Ringwood			03 9879 1622		FO	1/08/2019 4:0	7 PM			•	
18	Sydney Electrical Services	NSW	2026	(02) 9389 2797		sadmi	3/10/2017 3:4	8 PM				
19	Total Tools	NSW				sadmi	3/10/2017 11:	18 AM				
20	Trainers Pty Ltd	NSW	2000			Jannis	5/10/2017 3:0	9 PM				

3. From the Account page, press Supplier Invoice.

PRANCING CLOUD SOLUTIONS	All v Q. Search Accounts and more	* · • ? ‡ 🖱
Operations Manag Home Chatter Accounts V Contracts V Contracts	s \lor Management Logs \lor Expenses \lor Invoices \lor Payments \lor Jobs \lor Job	o Offers ∨ Customer Feedback ∨ Territories ∨ More ▼
Smith's Floorworld Ringwood A	+ Fol	ow Edit Delete View Account Hierarchy Create New Job Supplier Invoice
Billing Address Status Status Reason		
Details Related		Activity Chatter
Account Name Smith's Floorworld Ringwood	Account Owner	Log a Call New Event New Task Email
Parent Account	Franchise FCS - Ringwood FCS - Ringw	Recap your call Add
Company Humber	ringwood@floorworld.com.au / Phone	Filters: All time - All activities - All types
55005946654	03 9879 1622	Refresh • Expand All • View All
Type	Fax 03 9879 5267	V Upcoming & Overdue
Industry	Website www.floorworld.com.au	No next steps. To get things moving, add a task or set up a meeting.
	Available as Supplier	No past activity. Past meetings and tasks marked as done show up here.
	20.00%	•

The **Supplier Invoice** dialog box appears.

4. Enter the supplier invoice header details.

upplier Invoice Numb	er		Status			
08932			Open			
woice Date			* Due Date			
19/11/2019			26/11/2019			ê
erence						
08932A						
Rate (%) 10			Invoice Amount \$0.00			
JOB	SUMMARY	ACCOUNT CODE	AMOUNT	INCLUDES TAX?	AMOUNT INC TA	١X
Search Job	Q Summary	310	\$0.00	~	\$0.00	-

5. Now enter the first line, attributing the line to a job in the system.

		Supplie	r Invoice			
* Supplier Invoice Number			Status			
D8932			Open			•
* Invoice Date			*Due Date			
19/11/2019		曲	26/11/2019			苗
Reference						
D8932A						
Tax Rate (%) 10			Invoice Amount \$56.00			
JOB	SUMMARY	ACCOUNT CODE	AMOUNT	INCLUDES TAX?	AMOUNT INC TAX	
1 N-00156	Grout	310	\$56.00		\$56.00	+
					Cancel Generate	e Invoice

6. Press the + button to add a second line.

		Supplier	Invoice			
* Supplier Invoice Number			Status			
Invoice Date			* Due Date			•
19/11/2019		i	26/11/2019			
Reference D8932A						
Tax Rate (%) 10			Invoice Amount \$56.00			
JOB	SUMMARY	ACCOUNT CODE	AMOUNT	INCLUDES TAX?	ALCUNT INC TA	х
1 N-00156	Grout	310	\$56.00		\$56.00	+
2 🔊 JN-00156	Summary	310	\$0.00	V	\$0.00	Ô
					Cancel Gener	ate Invoice

7. When the invoice is complete, press Generate Invoice.

		Supplier	Invoice			
* Supplier Invoice Number			Status			
D8932			Open			•
* Invoice Date			* Due Date			
19/11/2019		ä	26/11/2019			曲
Reference						
D8932A						
ax Rate (%) 10			Invoice Amount \$3,306.00			
JOB	SUMMARY	ACCOUNT CODE	AMOUNT	INCLUDES TAX?	AMOUNT INC TAX	
JOB 1 SN-00156	SUMMARY X Grout	ACCOUNT CODE	AMOUNT \$56.00	INCLUDES TAX?	AMOUNT INC TAX	+
JOB 1 SJN-00156 2 SJN-00156	SUMMARY X Grout X Tiles	310	AMOUNT 556.00 \$3,250.00	INCLUDES TAX?	AMOUNT INC TAX \$56.00 \$3,250.00	+

8. The supplier invoice is now generated.

FRANCHISE CLOUD SOLUTIONS				All v Q. Search Invoices and more				×▼ 🖽 ? 🌣 🖡 🦱
Operations Manag	Home Chatter	Accounts \lor Contacts \lor	Contract	ts V Management Logs V Expenses V	Invoices V	Payments 🗸	Jobs 🗸	Job Offers 🗸 Customer Feedback 🗸 Territories 🗸 More 🔻 🧪
Invoice D8932								+ Follow Edit Clone Delete Create Invoice PDF Send to Financial System
Account Smith's Floorworld Ringwood	Invoice Date 19/11/2019	Amount Inc Tax \$3,306.00	Status Open					
Details Related								Activity Chatter
Sync Status				Owner				Log a Call New Event New Task Email
Invoice Number D8932				Amount \$3,005.4545				Recap your call Add
Invoice Date 19/11/2019				Tax Amount \$300.54				
Due Date 26/11/2019				Amount Inc Tax \$3,306.00				Filters: All time • All activities • All types
Туре				Tax Exempt				V Upcoming & Overdue
Status Open				Job				No next steps. To get things moving, add a task or set up a meeting.
Account Smith's Floorworld Ringwood				Has been emailed?				No past activity.
Reference D8932B				Financial System Id 🔘				Past meetings and tasks marked as done show up here.



Supplier Invoices are optionally synchronized with Xero. To send a Supplier Invoice to Xero, press the **Send to Financial System** button.

Working with Material Price Lists

Understanding material price lists	234
Creating a material price list	235
Adding a material	237

Understanding material price lists

Material Price Lists support job costing and estimation.

They are used in the Job Planning process to provide a ready menu of materials that are regularly used (with the pricing provided by particular suppliers). This feature supports up-front estimation of job profitability by enabling the franchisee to estimate the gross profit of each job.

ß				Q Se	arch Salesf	orce							*	•	? 🌲 🄇	5
Busine	ss Managem.	Home	Chatter	Accounts	✓ Jobs	~	Job Offers	~	Job Schedule	Invoices 🗸	 * Job Planning 	v ×	More	• •		
T Job P	lanning															
Job Number JN-00166	Job Name	Due Date	1	Customer Nar	ne	Estir \$24	nated Labour 0.00	Price	Estimate \$682.5	ed Material Pric 0	e An Sa S1	ive S	ave an	d Back	Cancel	
Roofing 💼	+															
Job	Tasks (1)	New	*	Roofing									Roo	fing Su	mmary	
NAME	DESCRIPTION	TOTAL	Materia					Ma	terial Description							
Doing th	Remove br	\$240.00	Yello	w			Q					Amou \$922.	nt 50	Гах 10%	Include	
				MN-00001 Dulux • 10 • 1	Yellow Pair	ıt • 55.	00	Ma	terial Cost	Sub To	tal	Cost	1	Profit	Total	
Job	Materials (2)	New			0.	0			\$0.00	\$0.00		\$675.	00	\$247.50	\$1,014.7	′5
DESCRI	QUANTITY	TOTAL						Ma	rkup(%)	Total						
	35.0	\$682.50 意							0.0	\$.00		ĭ≡	Lab	our Sun	nmary	
	0.0	\$.00 💼														
												Cost \$150.	.00	Amount \$240.00	Profit \$90.00	

Franchisors can create Material Price Lists that are visible by all their franchisees. You may choose to create multiple price lists, e.g.

- 1. A franchisor price list for all consumables supplied by the master franchise.
- 2. One or more outside supplier price lists.

Each price list is created for a specific supplier. Multiple suppliers requires multiple price lists.

There may be a need for some master franchisors to create regional price lists. If this is the case, then there needs to be a regional Master Franchise Profile Account that serves as the master for the Franchise Profile Accounts. Each Franchise Profile Account would then belong to one of the regional Master Franchise Profile Accounts. This setup is best configured during implementation.

Creating a material price list

Each price list contains items from a single supplier. When you add a new supplier, you should consider adding a new price list for that supplier.

Some price lists may be shared between multiple companies, while other price lists are owned by the franchisee. Franchisees own any price lists they create.

To create a price list

1. From the Material Price Lists tab, press New.

•-®			Q Search M	aterial Price	e Lists	s and more	่า			★• ?	\$.
• • • • • • • • •	Operations Manag Home Ch	natter	Accounts 🗸	Contacts	\sim	Contracts 🗸	Management Logs	✓ Ir	nvoices	Material Price Lists 🗸	More 🔻 💉
5 iten	Material Price Lists Recently Viewed us · Updated a few seconds ago								2-	\$\$ - Ⅲ - C	Import
	MATERIAL PRICE LIST NAME	∨ F	FRANCHISE			✓ SUPPLIEI	R		V OWN	IER ALIAS	\sim
1	NSW	F	FCS NSW						sadm	i	
2	Bondi Beach - Tradezone	F	FCS Bondi Beach			Tradezon	e		ljenk		•
3	Bondi Beach - Home Timber & Hardw	F	FCS Bondi Beach			Home Tin	nber and Hardware		ljenk		
4	Bondi Beach - Bunnings	F	FCS Bondi Beach			Bunnings			ljenk		•

The New Material Price list dialog box displays.

2. Enter the Material Price List Name, the Franchise, and the Supplier, then press Save.

New Materi	al Price List	_	
Information			
* Material Price List Name NSW - Tradezone	Owner Loryn Jenkins		
• Franchise	Supplier Tradezone		
KE FCS NSW X			
	Currency		
	Australian Dollar		
	Cancel Save & New Save		
The new price list displays.			
د. م Search	Material Price Lists and more	*• 🗄 ? 🌣 🌲 🌘	5
Operations Manag Home Chatter Accounts ~	Contacts V Contracts V Management Logs V Invoices V	✓ Material Price Lists ✓ More ▼	
Material Price List NSW - Tradezone		Edit Delete Clone 🔻	
DETAILS RELATED			
Material Price List Name NSW - Tradezone	Owner		
Franchise FCS NSW	Supplier Tradezone		
Created By	Last Modified By		
	Currency Australian Dollar		

Adding a material

Once you have created a price list, you will want to add the most commonly purchased items from that supplier to the price list.

To add a material to a price list

1. From the Material Price List, select the Related tab.

•**®	Q Search Material Pr	rice Lists a	and more			★ • 8 ?	¢	. (5
Operations Manag Home Chatter	Accounts 🗸 Contact	ts 🗸	Contracts 🗸	Management Logs 🗸	Invoices 🗸	Material Price Lists 🗸	More	•
Material Price List NSW - Tradezone						Edit Delete	Clone	•
DETAILS RELATED	•							
Material Price List Name NSW - Tradezone			Owner	n Jenkins				
Franchise FCS NSW			Supplier Tradezon	ne				
Created By Created By Loryn Jenkins, 23/05/2018 3:09 PM			Last Modif	fied By n Jenkins, 23/05/2018	3:09 PM			
			Currency Australia	n Dollar				

2. From the Materials section, press New.

• - ®				Q Sea	arch N	laterial Pric	e Lists	and more						*• 8	?	\$	6
***	Operations Manag	Home	Chatter	Accounts	~	Contacts	~	Contracts 🗸	Mana	gement Logs	\sim	Invoices	~	Material Price Lists	~	More 🔹	
Đ	Material Price List NSW - Tradezone													Edit Dele	ete	Clone	•
DE	TAILS RELATED																
Ľ	Materials (0)															New	

The New Material dialog box displays.

3. Enter all the relevant material details.

New M	1aterial
Information	
Material Number	Price
	15.00
* Product Name	Currency
36 Watt BSD Series LED - Frosted Diffuser - White	Australian Dollar 🔹
Quantity Unit Of Measure	Safety Data Sheet Issue Date
Each	
Size	Safety Data Sheet Product Name
Supplier	Safety Data Sheet Required
Davis Lighting	
Supplier Part Number	
BSD4364K	
Description	
36 Watt BSD Series LED Slimline Batten IP40 With Frosted Diffuser 4000K 4320Im White	
* Material Price List	
😰 NSW - Tradezone 🛛 🗙	
	Cancel Save & New Save
The new material record is added to	the price list.
Q Search Material Price Li	ists and more 🗮 🔹 🔅 🏚 🐻
Operations Manag Home Chatter Accounts V Contacts V	✓ Contracts ∨ Management Logs ∨ Invoices ∨ Material Price Lists ∨ More ▼
Naterial Price List NSW - Tradezone	Edit Delete Clone 👻
DETAILS RELATED	
Materials (1)	New
MATERIAL NUMBER PRODUCT NAME	QUANTITY UNIT OF MEASURE DESCRIPTION
MN-00014 36 Watt BSD Series LED - Frosted Diffuse B	Each 36 Watt BSD Series LED Slimline Batten I 💌
	View All

If there are a large number of supplier materials, it may be quicker for your system administrator to import them.

r

Customer Communications

Working with franchisees on the phone	241
How to locate the right record	
How to capture the outcomes of phone calls	245
How to send an email	247
How to confirm a scheduled appointment with a franchisee	251
Working with emails and templates	252
How to set up an email signature block	252
How to edit email template headers and footers	254
How to create a custom email template	
How to create a Quote email template	267
How to create an Invoice email template	268
Working with emails and syncing	269
Understanding email sending, responses and syncing	269
How to send all emails to my inbox	271
Granting EAC sync permission	272
Installing the Salesforce extension for Office 365	272
Installing the Chrome Salesforce extension for GSuite	278

Logging email using Salesforce extensions	282
Logging events using Salesforce extensions	. 285

Working with franchisees on the phone

Operations Management provides a range of tools for franchisors to be able to quickly and easily field franchisee requests. The following topics deal with a range of tasks common to Account, Contract, Invoice, Management Log or Customer Feedback records, encompassing taking notes, creating follow up tasks, sending emails, and scheduling meetings.

Be aware that the use of these features on Accounts, Contracts and Invoices create records that are visible to franchisees. To create compliance-related records that are not visible to franchisees, *See* "Working with Management Logs" on page 175.

How to locate the right record

When a customer or franchisee contacts you, you need to locate the right record so that you can record new information and update existing information in the right place.

To locate a person's record

1. Ask for the person's name. Enter their name into the Salesforce search box.

•-®				٩	bondi beach	1			*	•	l 👩
•••	Operations Manag	Home	Chatter	۴ q	"bondi beach"		-	Invoices 🗸	Payments 🗸 N	lore 🔻	. Martin
15 item	Accounts Recently Viewed s • Updated a few seconds ago			Q	"bondi beach" in Accounts FCS Bondi Beach Account	8			\$ • III •	C 🖌 🤇	New
	ACCOUNT NAME \sim	PHONE		83	Simon Walker		.IN	NG STATE	✓ ACCOUNT OW	/NER AL 🗸	
1	Simon Walker	0424463	511				v		rsale		•
2	Back In Motion Montrose	0424163	136	E B	James Walker Contact • FCS Bondi Beach				rsale		•
3	FCS Maroubra	0412111	111			Maroupra	Wer		bsmit		•

Salesforce displays a list of records that match the name you entered. The type of each record is displayed.

2. If you see a corresponding Account, select the account.

If you do not see the person's account, go to step 5.

Within the Account, you have access to all their recent details and preferences.

4 0	٩	bondi beach						? 🖡	
Operations Manag Home C	hatter Accounts	✓ Contacts ✓	Contracts 🗸	Management Logs	✓ Invoices	 Payments 	✓ More	•	
FCS Bondi Beach						+ Follow	Edit C	reate New .	Job
Billing Address Status Status R 11 Beach Road Active Bondi NSW 2026 Australia	eason								
DETAILS RELATED					ACTIVITY	СНАТ	TER		
Account Name FCS Bondi Beach	Acc	Simon Walker				New Event	New Task	More	
Parent Account	Em sin	ail non.walker@gmail.co	m		205 0 001		Herr fask	more	
Status Active	Pho 04	one 11123456			Create r	iew		Add	
Status Reason	Fax				Activity Tim	eline	T C	Expand	All
Inactive Reason	Cel	I Member Role			Next Steps				
Field Manager	Pri	mary Cell Group			No next step	s. To get things r	noving, add a	task or set	up a
Timezone Australia/Sydney GMT+1000	Sec	condary Cell Group			Past Activit	y	ung.		
Next Review Due Date					> 🖂 Ir	voice - INV-0	6 7:44 4	M 18/05	
Next Review Date 23/03/2018 12:00 PM					O	PS Finance Mana mon Walker	iger sent an ei	mail to	

- » Name and contact details
- » Address information
- » Summary of invoices and payments owing
- » Marketing information and communication preferences

3. To see current and historical jobs, contracts, territories, management logs, invoices, job offers, expenses, expense line items and business hours, select the **Related** tab.

•*®	Q, bondi beach	* = ? + 👼
Operations Manag Home Chatter	Accounts V Contacts V Contracts V Management Log	ζs ∨ Invoices ∨ Payments ∨ More ▼ 🖋
FCS Bondi Beach 🚣		+ Follow Edit Create New Job
DETAILS RELATED		ACTIVITY CHATTER
We found no potential duplicates of thi No duplicate rules are activated. Activate duplicate rules	s account. to identify potential duplicate records.	Log a Call New Event New Task More
Related Contacts (2)	New Contact Add Relationship	Activity Timeline
Account N FCS Bondi Beach Title: Email: athelwald.jenkins@gmail.com	Account N FCS Bondi Beach Title: Ernail:	Next Steps More Steps No next steps. To get things moving, add a task or set up a meeting
	View All	Past Activity
Contracts (Franchise Profile) (2) 00000124 Account Na Simon Walker Status: Activated Contract Star 5/10/2017	O0000224 Account Na FCS Bondi Beach Status: Activated Contract Star 1/05/2018	> ≤ Invoice - INV-0 @ 7:44 AM 18/05 ▼ OPS Finance Manager sent an email to Simon Walker > im Scheduled Review 12:00 PM 23/03 ▼ OPS Field Manager had an Event
	View All	Scheduled Review 12:00 PM 23/03 V

4. If the inquiry relates to a job, a job offer, or any other type of record, you can reach the record by clicking on the record number.

• - D	All 👻 🔍 Search	n Accounts and m	ore		★ - 🗄 ? 🌣 单 🐻
Operations Manag	Home Chatter	Accounts 🗸	Contacts 🗸	Contracts 🗸	Management Logs 🗸 More 🔻 💉
FCS Bondi Beach 🛔]				+ Follow Edit Create New Job
➡ Job Offers (6+)					
JOB OFFER N JOP	STATUS	COMMENTS			
JON-00273 JN-00348	Timed Out				
JON-00260 JN-00332	Accepted				
JON-00259 JN-00331	Accepted				
JON-00258 JN-00330	Accepted				
JON-00241 JN-00296	Timed Out				
JON-00198 JN-00250	Timed Out				
	View All				
How to capture the outcomes of phone calls

When a franchisee calls and leaves a message, sometimes you just need to record information and other times someone needs to follow up the call.

To record information

- 1. Locate the Account, Contract, Invoice, Management Log or Customer Feedback. *See* "How to locate the right record" on page 242.
- 2. From the Activity pane's Log a Call tab, press Create new...

6 -8	Q bondi beach	* 🖬 ? 单 🐻
Operations Manag Home Chatter	Accounts V Contacts V Contracts V Management Logs	✓ Invoices ✓ Payments ✓ More ▼
Account FCS Bondi Beach		+ Follow Edit Create New Job
Billing Address Status Status Reason 11 Beach Road Active Bondi NSW 2026 Australia		
DETAILS RELATED		ACTIVITY CHATTER
Account Name FCS Bondi Beach	Account Owner	
Parent Account	Email simon.walker@gmail.com	Log a Call New Event New Task Wore
Status Active	Phone 0411123456	Create new Add
Status Reason	Fax	Activity Timeline
Inactive Reason	Cell Member Role	Next Steps More Steps
Field Manager	Primary Cell Group	No next steps. To get things moving, add a task or set up a
Timezone Australia/Sydney GMT+1000	Secondary Cell Group	Past Activity

The Log a Call activity pane displays.

3. Complete the details and press **Save**.

- n	Q bondi beach	* 🖬 ? 🖡 👼
Operations Manag Home Chatte	Accounts V Contacts V Management Logs	✓ Invoices ✓ Payments ✓ More ▼
Account FCS Bondi Beach		+ Follow Edit Create New Job
Billing Address Status Status Reason 11 Beach Road Active Bondi NSW 2026 Australia		
DETAILS RELATED		ACTIVITY CHATTER
Account Name FCS Bondi Beach Parent Account	Account Owner	Log a Call New Event New Task More
Status Active	Phone 0411123456	Subject Call Simon
Status Reason	Fax	Comments Question on location details for tomorrow.
Inactive Reason	Cell Member Role	
Field Manager OPS Field Manager	Primary Cell Group	Name
Timezone Australia/Sydney GMT+1000 Next Review Due Date	Secondary Cell Group	Save

The call is saved to the record's **Activity Timeline**.

•••	Q bondi beach	*• 🖶 ? 单 👼
Operations Manag Home Chatter	Accounts V Contacts V Contracts V Management Logs	✓ Invoices ✓ Payments ✓ More ▼
Account FCS Bondi Beach		+ Follow Edit Create New Job
Billing Address Status Status Reason 11 Beach Road Active Bondi NSW 2026 Australia		
DETAILS RELATED		ACTIVITY CHATTER
Account Name FCS Bondi Beach	Account Owner	Log a Call New Event New Task More
Status Active	Simon.walker@gmail.com Phone 0411123456	Create new Add
Status Reason	Fax	Activity Timeline
Inactive Reason	Cell Member Role	Next Steps ····· More Steps
Field Manager	Primary Cell Group	No next steps. To get things moving, add a task or set up a
Timezone Australia/Sydney GMT+1000	Secondary Cell Group	Past Activity
Next Review Due Date		> 🖸 Call Simon Today 💌
Next Review Date 23/03/2018 12:00 PM		You logged a call with Simon Walker

How to send an email

Salesforce allows you to send an email to the franchisee. When you send an email using Salesforce the email is logged to the Activity Timeline. This is useful for keeping a record of all interactions with the franchisee.

To send an email

- 1. Locate the Account, Contract, Invoice, Management Log or Customer Feedback. *See* "How to locate the right record" on page 242.
- 2. From the Activity pane, select the Email tab.

• - ®	Q Search Salesforce	*• 🖽 ? 单 👼
Operations Manag Home Chatter	Accounts V Contacts V Contracts V Management Logs	∨ Invoices ∨ Payments ∨ More ▼
FCS Bondi Beach 👗		+ Follow Edit Create New Job
Billing Address Status Reason 11 Beach Road Active Bondi NSW 2026 Australia		
DETAILS RELATED		ACTIVITY CHATTER
Account Name FCS Bondi Beach	Account Owner	Log a Call New Event New Tesk Empil
Parent Account	Email simon.walker@gmail.com	
Status Active	Phone 0411123456	Create new Add
Status Reason	Fax	Activity Timeline
Inactive Reason	Cell Member Role	Next Steps ····· More Steps
Field Manager	Primary Cell Group	> 🖆 🗌 Wants to reschedule Tomorrow 💌
Timezone Australia/Sydney GMT+1000	Secondary Cell Group	OPS Compliance Manager has an upcoming Task with Simon Walker

The Email tab displays, and shows the owner of the record in the From address.

3. Copy the email address from Account Name and paste it into the To field.

* @	Q Sea	rch Salesforce				*• 🖬 ? 单 🌀
Operations Manag Home Chat	er Accounts 🗸	Contacts 🗸	Contracts 🗸 🛛	lanagement Logs 🗸 🗸	Invoices 🗸	Payments 🗸 More 🔻 🤞
Account FCS Bondi Beach						+ Follow Edit Create New Job
Billing Address Status Status Rease 11 Beach Road Active Bondi NSW 2026 Australia	n					
DETAILS RELATED				1	ACTIVITY	CHATTER
Account Name FCS Bondi Beach Parent Account	Accoun	: Owner mon Walker		£	Log a Call	New Event New Task Email
Status Active	Phone 04111	walker@gmail.co	Copy Email Add	iress	*From	OPS Head Office Manager <headoffic▼< td=""></headoffic▼<>
Status Reason	Fax		Inspect Elemen Services	t 🕨	То	
Inactive Reason	Cell Me	nber Role				neadonicemanager@trc.com.rcso X
OPS Field Manager		Cell Group		2	Subject	Enter Subject
Australia/Sydney GMT+1000	J	ily cell Gloup			Font	• Size •
Next Review Date 23/03/2018 12:00 PM					B I	
✓ Business Information						
Legal Entity Name Walker Family Trust	Busines	s Number 3222			Powere	d by Salesforce
Trading Name Aura Pty Limited as Trustee for Walker Family Trust	Compa 60444	ıy Number 5554			http://ww	vw.salesforce.com/
Operating Structure Trust					<i>© <</i> 1> E	≹ ◎ 亩 ♂ Send

4. Complete Subject and Details then press Send.

•*-®	Q Search Salesforce	🖈 🖬 ? 🌲 👼
Operations Manag Home Chatter	Accounts V Contacts V Contracts V Management Logs V	Invoices 🗸 Payments 🗸 More 🔻
Account FCS Bondi Beach Billing Address 11 Beach Road Bondi NSW 2026 Australia		+ Follow Edit Create New Job
DETAILS RELATED		ACTIVITY CHATTER
Account Name FCS Bondi Beach Parent Account Status Active Status Reason Inactive Reason	Account Owner Simon Walker Email simon.walker@gmail.com Phone 0411123456 Fax Cell Member Role	Log a Call New Event New Task Email *From OPS Head Office Manager (simon.walker@gmail.com ×) To
Field Manager	Primary Cell Group	Bcc
Timezone Australia/Sydney GMT+1000 Next Review Due Date	Secondary Cell Group	Subject Additional meeting times
Next Review Date 23/03/2018 12:00 PM		
Business Information	Business Number	Hi Simon
waiker Family Irust Trading Name Aura Pty Limited as Trustee for Walker Family Trust Operating Structure	594333222 Company Number 604445554	the 15th and 18th. Is that of interest? Yours, Luke
Trust		
Billing Address	Shipping Address	ଡ ଏନ ଞ୍⊚ ଲ ଫ Send

The email is sent and is added to the **Past Activity**.

•**®	Q Search Salesforce	★▼ = ? ≜ 🐻
Operations Manag Home Chatt	ter Accounts V Contacts V Contracts V Management Log	s 🗸 Invoices 🗸 Payments 🗸 More 🔻 🖋
Account FCS Bondi Beach		+ Follow Edit Create New Job
Billing Address Status Status Reaso 11 Beach Road Active Bondi NSW 2026 Australia	on	
DETAILS RELATED		ACTIVITY CHATTER
Account Name FCS Bondi Beach	Account Owner	
Parent Account	Email simon.walker@gmail.com	Log a Call New Event New Task Email
Status Active	Phone 0411123456	Create new Add
Status Reason	Fax	
Inactive Reason	Cell Member Role	Next Steps
Field Manager	Primary Cell Group	
Timezone	Secondary Cell Group	Wants to reschedule Tomorrow OPS Compliance Manager has an upcoming Task
Australia/Sydney GMT+1000 Next Review Due Date		with simon walker
Next Review Date 23/03/2018 12:00 PM		Additional meeting 5:21 PM Today
✓ Business Information		You sent an email to simon.walker@gmail.com
Legal Entity Name Walker Family Trust	Business Number 554333222	Call Simon Today You logged a call with Simon Walker
You can easily templates. For <u>Create a Temp</u>	r streamline the emails you send more information refer to the S <u>plate</u> . CHATTER	d by creating standardized alesforce documentation,
Log a Call New E	Event New Task Email	
* From REC Sale	es Manager <mike@franchisec▼< td=""><td></td></mike@franchisec▼<>	
То		
Related To	vor	
€ (1) ⊑ © 前 ⊡	Send ■ ● 亩 ₫	

How to confirm a scheduled appointment with a franchisee



Salesforce does not provide the ability to send a meeting request to a franchisee using built-in Activity features.

To send a meeting invite or appointment confirmation

>> Use Management Logs selecting the Meeting type, which contains automated invitation reminders. See "Working with Management Logs" on page 175.

Working with emails and templates

You can configure email templates to suit your organization.

How to set up an email signature block

Setting up a signature block is something almost everyone does when they first set up their personal settings within Salesforce.

System administrators need to upload the signature block images and distribute the resulting URLs to each user. Then each user sets up their own signature block URLs.



Ask your system administrator for a signature block URL.

To set up a signature block

- 1. Obtain the signature block URL from your system administrator.
- 2. Go to your personal Settings.



3. Go to **My Email Settings**.

FRANCHISE SOLUTIONS		All 👻 🔍 Sea	rch Salesforce					*	• • ?	• 6
Business Manage	Home Chatter Accounts V Contacts	✓ Jobs ✓ Job Offers ✓	Job Calendar Invo	oices 🗸 Payments 🗸	Customer Feedback 🗸	Material Price Lists 🗸	Reports 🗸	* John Smith 🗸 🗙	More 🔻	
Q Quick Find	Personal Information									
✓ My Personal Information										
Advanced User Details	Personal Information								Help for	r this Page 🥹
Approver Settings										
Change My Password	Details								= Required	Information
Connections	First Name	John								
Grant Account Login Access	Last Name	Smith								
Language & Time Zone	Alias	FO								
Login History	Username	franchiseeowner@nfctrial01.demo								
Personal Information	Niokname	franchiseeowner								
Reset My Security Token	Phone									
Security Central	Fax Fax									
> Display & Layout	Z Mobile	0421 788 574								
v Email	Address									
My Email Settings	Street	9 Durana Otranat								
My Email to Salesforce		e bjiter steer								
My Unresolved Items	State(Province	Ringwood								
> Chatter	Zip/Postal Code	3134								
> Calendar & Reminders	Country	Australia								
> Desktop Add-Ons	My Work Information									
> Import	Company Name									
	Title	Mr								
	Department									
	Division									
	Employee Number									
	Start of Day	6:00 AM								
	End of Day	11:00 PM 😳								
		Save	Cancel							

4. Paste the URL provided by your system administrator.

FRANCHISE CLOUD SOLUTIONS	Al v Q. Search Salesforce 🛞 🐑 🛄 😤
Business Manage	Home Chatter Accounts 🗸 Jobs 🗸 Job Offers 🗸 Job Schedule Invoices 🗸 Payments 🗸 Customer Feedback 🗸 Contacts 🗸 Material Price Lists 🗸 Files 🗸 Reports 🗸 People 🗸 More 🔻 🇳
Q. Quick find Q. Quick find My Personal Information Advanced User Details Approve Settings Authentication Settings for Dearmal Systems Connections Grant Account Login Access Language Time Zone Login Visitory Personal Information Security Contral > Delapity & Layout Email My Email Settings My Email Settings	We Enail Settings My Enail Settings My enails Settings My
> Chatter	Subscriptions
> Lanenara e kemindes > Desktop Add-Ons > Import	Bedro Save Woning Emst Becore Salestore CRW Contert Avers an Daily Dignet Box Box Box Centert

5. Press Save.

FRANCHISE	All 🔻 Q. Search Salesforce 🛛 🛞 🦉 🥶 🛛	ļ ([®])
Business Manage	Home Chatter Accounts v Jobs v Job Offers v Job Schedule Invoices v Payments v Customer Feedback v Contacts v Material Price Lists v Files v Reports v People v More *	1
Q. Quick Find	to My Email Settings	
Advanced User Details	My Email Settings Hep-treat	22ge 🕑
Authentication Settings for External Systems	Outgoing Email Settings I = Negular Hote How would you like your name to appear on your outgoing small? Email News	Telion
Connections	What email address would you like to use as your return address? Email Address urrys.miter@franchizec	
Grant Account Login Access Language & Time Zone	Woold you like to automatically Dec mella to your tellar and attend? Automatical to a dotted to your oxfania genality (1533 character mas):	
Login History Personal Information	Email Signation (and part-Trade-Linkinghand) and a second se	
Security Central		
 > Display & Layout > Email 	Note: All outgoing emails will contain a "Powered by Selectron" tag (see the hottoom. This tag can be removed in the paid Editions of the product.	
My Email Settings My Email to Salesforce My Unresolved Items	In the join U.A. at initial adverse to Unique at a training of the Section of Compare Section of the U.A. at a section of the Section of Compare Section of the U.A. at a section of the Section of Compare Of the Section of the U.A. at a section of the Section	
> Chatter	Subscriptions	
S Calendar & Reminders Desktop Add-Ons Import	Send Agen Xhaning Emails Rooters Salestone CRN Content Email Alens 1 Rooters Salestone CRN Content Anets so Daily Diget 1	
	and the second se	

6. The email signature block will now appear within your emails.

CCOUD Southous	All 🔻 0, Search Contacts and more
Business Manage Home Chatter Accounts \lor Jobs \lor Job Offers	∨ Job Schedule Invoices ∨ Payments ∨ Customer Feedback ∨ Contacts ∨ Material Price Lists ∨ Files ∨ Reports ∨ Dashboards ∨ More ♥
Contact Mr. Bob Smith	+ Follow Edit Change Record Type Delete View Contact Hierarchy Clone Change Owner Printable View
Title Account Name Phone (2) ♥ Email b.smith@handyway.com.au	Const. Owner Torym Jensions L
Details Related	Activity Chatter
Contact Owner Cony Jenkins	Phone Email
Name Mr. Bob Smith	Home Phone *From Kerryn Miler -kerryn miler@fanchisecloudsolutions.com> v
Account Name	Mobie 0431661889 To Bob Smith X Cc Dhub Brons
Department	Bcc lisernyn.miler@franchisecloudsolut x) Fax
Birthdate	Erval
Reports To	Dummernandywaycom.au Foat - Size - B I U A- E- II II & 2 d Assistant
Lead Source	Asst. Phone
Contact Currency AUD - Australian Dollar	Kerryn Miler
Mailing Address	Other Address Support & Training Agent +61 421 788 574 FR
Created By	Last Modified By C Last
Developing	Contact Record Type Contact WWW.franchisecloudsolutions.com
мекофоми	/ Presentie Distance
	rometer by Salestoce http://www.salesforce.com/

How to edit email template headers and footers

Most likely you will have created branded headers and footers for use with all email templates.

To review the branded email headers and footers

1. Open the **App Launcher**.

FRANCHISE CLOUD	All v Q. Search Salesforce	💌 🖬 ? 🌲 🚱
Business Manage Home Chatter Accounts V Contacts V	Jobs 🗸 Job Offers 🤍 Job Calendar Invoices 🗸 Payments 🗸 Customer Feedback	K ∨ Material Price Lists ∨ Reports ∨ Dashboards ∨ * More ▼
Today Events	Today's Tasks	Assistant
View Calendar	VIEW AUI	
Recent Records	Key Deals To see your opportunity-related data, contact your Salesforce admin.	
FCS - Claymore FCS - Baskey		
Ctober-09-2019-16:25:53-AEDT+1100.jpg		
<u>IN-00457</u>		
View All		

2. In the App Launcher Search box, enter *enhanced letterheads* and select the Enhanced Letterheads link.

	FRANCHISE	All w O Search Salasfarro		
III Bus	App Launcher	enhanced letterheads Ø		1
Today's I	∽ All Apps		-1	
	~ All Items 2			
	Enhanced Letter/heads			
Recent F				
<u>ot</u>				
FC				
N IN				

3. You may see an empty **Enhanced Letterheads** list. To see any of the letterheads, create a **New** list view.

FRANCHISE CLOUD SOLUTIONS			All 🔻 🔍 Searc	ch Enhanced Letterheads and more			* •	? 🌲 🚱
Business Manage	Home Chatter	Accounts \lor Contacts \lor	Jobs $ \lor $ Job Offers $ \lor $	Job Calendar Invoices 🗸 Paym	ents \lor Customer Feedback \lor	Material Price Lists 🗸 🔹 Recently Viewe	d Enhan \lor × More	× /
Enhanced Letterheads Recently Viewed						۹ C. Search this li	st 🕸 🕶	C 0 T
Name		 Description 		✓ Created By		✓ Last Modified Date	LIST VIEW CONTROLS	~
							New	
						2		

4. Name the list view and press Save.



5. Now select the Standard Letterhead.

							All	▼ Q,	Search	Enhanced Let	terheads an	d more									*	•	?	÷ (3
	Business Manage	Home	Chatter	Accounts \lor	Contact	s 🗸 Job	s ~ .	Job Offers	v J	Job Calendar	Invoices	∨ Payr	nents 🗸	Customer F	eedback 🗸	Mate	rial Price L	sts 🗸	* Rece	ntly Viewed Enhan.	~ ~ ×	More	*		/
1 item	Enhanced Letterheads All	nhanced lette	rheads - Up	dated a minute a	go														Q, Se	arch this list		\$*	G	6 1	2
	Name 1				~	Created By					∨ La	st Modified	i Date					\sim 1	Description	n				\sim	
1	FCS Standard Letterhead					ljenk					23	/01/2020	2:18 PM												·

6. You will be able to edit the Standard Letterhead.

~	FRANCHISE							All 👻 C	Sea	arch Enhanced	Letterheads ar	d more							* -	** 🖽 ? 🌣	🖈 🖬 ? 🌣 😤	🖈 🖬 ? 🌣 😤 🌘
Bu	siness Manage	Home	Chatter	Accounts \lor	Contact	ol V i	bs 🗸	Job Offers	~ .	Job Calendar	Invoices 🗸	Payments \lor	Customer Fee	edback 🗸	Material Price Lists	Material Price Lists $~\lor~~$ Reports $~\lor~~$	Material Price Lists \lor Reports \lor * Recently Viewed	Material Price Lists v Reports v Recently Viewed Enhan	Material Price Lists \lor Reports \lor * Recently Viewed Enhan $\lor\times$	Material Price Lists v Reports v Recently Viewed Enhan v × More	Material Price Lists v Reports v Recently Viewed Enhan v × More v	Material Price Lists v Reports v Recently Viewed Enhan v × More v
En FC	hanced Letterhead S Standard Letter	nead																				
Descriptio	n																					
Detail	s																					
✓ Info	rmation																					
Name FCS Sta	indard Letterhead							Description														
✓ Lett	erhead Content																					
Header						FRA CL SOL		ISE D NS														
Footer (((Sende	r.Signature_c))}																					
Created	By yn Jenkins, 23/01/2020	2:18 PM						Last Modified E	ly I <mark>kins</mark> , 2	25/03/20204	:46 PM											

There may be more than one Letterhead available within your implementation. If there is, review each letterhead to see which one(s) you might like to use. You can add letterheads to any custom email template you might choose to create. *See* "How to create a custom email template" below.

How to create a custom email template

Custom email templates allow you to produce professional email communications for each standard customer touch-point. They often consist of

- » customized header and footers
- » boilerplate text
- » variables that draw information from the

Email templates that are frequently created by our clients include

- » New customer initial contact
- » Returning customer initial contact
- » New Quote Job request
- » New Do & Charge Job request
- » Scheduled appointment notification
- » Quote email
- » Invoice email
- » Invoice overdue

To create a custom email template

1. Open the App Launcher.



2. In the App Launcher Search box, enter *email templates* and select the Email Templates link.

	CLOUD	All 🚽 🔿 Saarch Salacforra		🗭 🥵
Bu:	App Launcher	email templates 🛛 😵		1
Today's I	∽ All Apps		1	
	All Marrie 2		-	
	V All Items			
	Email Templates			
Recent F				
E. FC				
En FC				

3. You may see an empty **Email Templates** list. Press New Email Template.



4. Insert an email template name that will help you identify it.

			New	ı Email	Temp	olate				
Information					•					
* Email Template Na	ame				Relate	d Entity 1	Туре			
My Quote Email	I Template				N	lone				•
Description					Folder					
					Priv	ate Em	ail Ter	nplates		
Message Content										
Subject					Enhan	ced Lette	erhead			
					Sea	rch Enha	anced	Letterheads		Q
HTML Value										
Source For	t • Size •	BI	<u>U</u> <u>A</u> ·	1= :=	1 € 3	2.2		1		
										1
Additional Inform	ation									
Created By					Last M	lodified E	Зу			
									Cancel	Save

5. If you are going to use merge fields, you must base the email template off a particular entity type.

New Email	Template
Information	
* Email Template Name	Related Entity Type
My Quote Email Template	None 💌
Description	Catalog Profile Check-In
Message Content	Contact
Subject	Course
	Customer Feedback
HTML Value	DocuSign Recipient Status
Source Font - Size - B I U A - ;= :=	DocuSign Status
	Instructor
	Invoice
	dof
	Job Offer
Additional Information	[]
Created by	Last Μοαίπεα Βγ
	Cancel Save

6. Enter an email subject line.

New Ema	il Template
Information	
* Email Template Name	Related Entity Type
My Quote Email Template	Job
Description	Folder Private Email Templates
Message Content	
Subject	Enhanced Letterhead
FCS Invoice - {{{FCS_OPSJobc.Name}}}	Search Enhanced Letterheads Q
HTML Value	
Source Font - Size - B $I \sqcup A$ - $\frac{1}{2}$:	
	1
Additional Information Created By	Last Modified By
	Cancel Save

7. Select an appropriate letterhead.

Related Entity Type Job Folder Private Email Templates Enhanced Letterhead Şearch Enhanced Letterheads
Related Entity Type Job Folder Private Email Templates Enhanced Letterhead Şearch Enhanced Letterheads Q
Job Folder Private Email Templates Enhanced Letterhead Şearch Enhanced Letterheads
Folder Private Email Templates Enhanced Letterhead Şearch Enhanced Letterheads Q
Enhanced Letterhead
Enhanced Letterhead Şearch Enhanced Letterheads Q
Enhanced Letterhead
Şearch Enhanced Letterheads Q
FCS Standard Letterhead
0
0
[] Last Modified By

You can review the available letterheads. *See* "How to edit email template headers and footers" on page 254.

8. Enter boilerplate text into the HTML Value field.

New En	nail Template
formation	
* Email Template Name	Related Entity Type
My Quote Email Template	Job
Description	Folder
	Private Email Templates
essage Content	
Subject	Enhanced Letterhead
FCS Invoice - {{{FCS_OPSJobc.Name}}}	E FCS Standard Letterhead ×
HTML Value	
Source Font - Size - B I U A - 2	
Dear ,	
Please find attached your quote for job .	
Feel free to contact me if you have any queries	or need further information about the work.
Thank you,	
	0
dditional Information	
Croated By	Last Modified By
ereated by	and mounted by

9. To insert variables into the email template body, press the **Insert Merge Field** button (i.e. the brace button { }).

New Ema	ail Template
Information	
* Email Template Name	Related Entity Type
My Quote Email Template	dof
Description	Folder Private Email Templates
Message Content	
Subject	Enhanced Letterhead
FCS Invoice - {{{FCS_OPSJobc.Name}}}	E FCS Standard Letterhead ×
HTML Value Source Font Size B I U A JE : Dear , Please find attached your quote for job . Feel free to contact me if you have any queries of Thank you,	r need further information about the work.
Additional Information	
Created By	Last Modified By
	Cancel Save

10. Select the Object Reference. Sometimes you might reference yourself (Sender) or your organization (Organization).

		New Email Template	×
Informati		Insert Merge Field	
* Email T My Qu	<u>Recipient</u>	Select Merge Field	
Descript	Sender	Search Recipient merge fields	Q
Descript	Organization	• # Contacts	Contact
Message		Accepts Reference Calls	Contact
Subject FCS Ir		Assistant's Name	Contact
HTML Va		Asst. Phone	Contact
So So		Birthdate	Contact
Dear		Business Fax	Contact
Feel f		O Business Phone	Contact
Thanl		Contact Description	Contact
		Contact ID	Contact
		Created By ID	Contact
		Created Date	Contact
Additiona		O Data.com Key	Contact
Created		Canc	el Insert
			Cancel Save

11. Now search for and then select the appropriate Merge Field. Press **Insert** when complete.

		New Email Template	
Informati		Insert Merge Field	
* Email T My Qu Descripti	Recipient Sender Organization	Select Merge Field	•
Message d Subject FCS Ir HTML Va Dear Pleas Feel 1 Thank		Franchise Name Job Name Last Name Cancel Insert	X
		Cancel	Save

12. Enter as many merge fields as are appropriate to your template. Press **Save** when the template is complete.

New Er	nail Template
Information	
* Email Template Name	Related Entity Type
My Quote Email Template	Job
Description	Folder
	Private Email Templates
Message Content	
Subject	Enhanced Letterhead
FCS Invoice - {{{FCS_OPSJobc.Name}}}	E FCS Standard Letterhead ×
HTML Value	
⊙ Source Font ▼ 16 ▼ B I U A ▼ 1=	
Dear {{{FCS_OPS_Job_c.FCS_OPS_First	_Namec}},
Please find attached your quote for job {{{FCS_	_OPSJobc.Name}}}.
Feel free to contact me if you have any queries	s or need further information about the work.
Thank you,	
	0
Additional Information	
Additional Information	
Created By	Last Modified By
	Cancel Save

Remember to test your template before sending it to the first customer.

To insert a merge field into a subject line, press the Insert Merge Field button (i.e. the brace button $\{\}$) attached to the HTML Value field. Once the variable is inserted into the HTML Value field, you can copy and paste it into the Subject line.

How to create a Quote email template

When you are using the Nextdoc for document generation, you need to use an email template for any Quotes you send to customers. You can use the standard Quote email template or you can create your own custom Quote email template.

To create a custom quote email template

- 1. Follow the instructions in "How to create a custom email template" on page 256.
- 2. Ensure you base the Entity Type on Job.

How to create an Invoice email template

When you are using the Nextdoc for document generation, you need to use an email template for any Invoices you send to customers. You can use the standard Invoice email template or you can create your own custom Invoice email template.

To create a custom invoice email template

- 1. Follow the instructions in "How to create a custom email template" on page 256.
- 2. Ensure you base the Entity Type on Invoice.

Working with emails and syncing

There are several different methods of coordinating how email operates between Salesforce and your email system. Please read "Understanding email sending, responses and syncing" below to obtain an overview of which method may be most appropriate for your organization.

Understanding email sending, responses and syncing

When you send an email from Salesforce, a Salesforce email server will send the email on your behalf. The server that sends the email is not your usual company email server. Instead, it is a Salesforce server that claims to be from your personal email account.



Your system administrator has to specially configure both Salesforce and your company domain name systems to enable Salesforce to act on your behalf.

When a recipient responds to your email, the response will go to your personal email inbox (not to Salesforce). This means:

Outbound emails	Inbound emails
Sent by Salesforce server	Responds to your personal email inbox
Not stored in your personal email outbox	Not stored in Salesforce

If you did nothing else, your record of emails sent and received would be divided between these two systems. Fortunately, Salesforce provide a number of mechanisms to help overcome this divide.

Forwarding a record of sent emails to your email inbox

To ensure your email inbox has a record of all emails you send from Salesforce, you can choose to send emails to your inbox. *See* "How to send all emails to my inbox" on page 271.

Automatic capture of Salesforce-related emails

Salesforce provides a way to automatically capture emails relating to Salesforce contacts from within your personal email and to associate the email with matching record(s) in Salesforce. This feature is called **Einstein Activity Capture** (EAC).

If your system administrator configures EAC and you agree to use it:

- * emails sent and received within your personal email inbox is captured by Salesforce and associated with records in Salesforce
- » emails captured by EAC will appear in the Activity Timeline beside each record

- » emails displayed in the Activity Timeline will, at your discretion, be visible to:
 - » only you
 - * to people who belong to Salesforce groups (you select the groups who can see your emails), or
 - » everyone



EAC is not suitable for everyone

While EAC provides a convenient mechanism, there are potential downsides to using it.

- 1. Emails captured with EAC are transient. They are retained for between six and eighteen months (depending on whether your organization is using the free or paid version of EAC) after which they are discarded. If you wish to store emails in Salesforce permanently, you should explore other options.
- 2. Emails captured with EAC cannot be reported on. Emails that you send from Salesforce are stored in the Activity History and can be made the subject of reports. Emails that are captured by EAC are not stored in the Salesforce Activity History (even though they appear there) and cannot be made the subject of reports.
- 3. EAC does not respect Franchise Cloud Solutions' franchise data model. EAC is designed for use by a single organization and knows nothing about how Franchise Cloud Solutions products partition information between accounts or jobs, and between franchisors or franchisees.

Given the above considerations

- If you're involved in marketing or sales roles using Franchise Recruitment, EAC is suitable for use unless the available retention periods are too short to be useful.
- If you're involved in field management, operations or finance using Franchise Operations, EAC is not recommended for use as it will not associate emails with the most relevant custom objects.

If EAC is suitable for your use, your system administrator must configure the system and grant users access to EAC. Talk to your system administrator if you do not know whether this has been done.

Salesforce extensions for Office 365 and GSuite

If you decide that EAC is not suitable for your needs, you may prefer to use the Salesforce extensions for Office 365 and GSuite. The Salesforce extensions allow you to select which emails (and email threads) are stored in Salesforce. You also have control over which records they are stored against. In addition to pure capture of email, the Salesforce extensions for Office 365 and Chrome also provides access to Salesforce templates within your email inbox, increasing your productivity even when you're not in Salesforce itself.

- » "Installing the Salesforce extension for Office 365" on the next page
- » "Installing the Chrome Salesforce extension for GSuite" on page 278
- » "Logging email using Salesforce extensions" on page 282
- » "Logging events using Salesforce extensions" on page 285

How to send all emails to my inbox

You can configure all emails you send within Salesforce to be automatically blind copied to your own email address.

To blind copy all emails to your email address

1. Go to View Profile and choose Settings.



2. Open the Email option and choose My Email Settings.



3. Set Automatic Bcc to Yes, then press Save.

			Q Search					**	•	?‡	. 🛞
Busines	s Managem Ho	ome Tasks 🗸 Chatter	Accounts \lor Jobs \lor	Job Calendar	Invoices \smallsetminus	Contacts \checkmark	Audits \checkmark	Payments \smallsetminus	Reports 🗸	More	• /
-											
Q, Quick Find		My Email Settin	ıgs								
V My Personal Int	formation										
Advanced U	User Details	My Empil Cottings								Help for th	Page 0
Approver S	ettings	wy Email Settings								Thep for the	or age
Change My	Password	Outgoing Email Settings							1	Required Inf	ormation
Connection	15										
External Cr	redentials	Send through Salesforce	mear on wur outoning emeil?								
Grant Acco	unt Login Access	Email Name	John Smith								
Language 8	& Time Zone	What email address would you like Email Address	to use as your return address?								
Login Histo	ry	Would you like to automatically BCC	cemails to your return address?	4							
Personal In	formation	Automatic Boc	Yes								
Reset My S	ecurity Token	Signature									
Security Ce	entral	This signature will be added to your	outgoing emails (1333 characters n	nax):							
> Display & Layo	ut	Lines organizate	{{{Sender.Email_Signaturec}}								
∨ Email											
My Email S	ettings										
My Email to	o Salesforce										
My Unresol	lved Items	Note: All outgoing emails will contai	n a "Powered by Salesforce" tag line	at the bottom. This tag	g can be removed i	n the paid Editions of	the product.				
> Chatter		Subscriptions									
> Calendar & Rer	ninders	Receive Salesforce CRM Contr	ent Email Alerts	-8	2						
> Desktop Add-C	Dns	Parcenne Sanéstorice CRM Conte	mcAvents as Daily Digest 1	_	-						
> Import			Save	Cancel							

If you need to send a copy of your email to an address that is not yours, follow the above procedure and then set up a forwarding rule within your personal email to forward to the secondary address.

Granting EAC sync permission

If your system administrator has enabled Einstein Activity Capture (EAC) sync for your profile, you must personally agree to using EAC. Salesforce will ask for your agreement to use EAC by displaying a banner at the top of the Salesforce page.

- Before you agree, you should understand whether your administrator
- » is syncing emails, events, and contacts, or
- » is syncing events and contacts only
- If you agree to using EAC, you can choose whether captured records are visible to
 - » only you, or
 - » a defined group of users (i.e. users who belong to specific groups), or
 - » everyone who can view the records you have access to

Installing the Salesforce extension for Office 365

The Salesforce extension for Office 365 provides you control as to

- » which Outlook 365 emails or events are logged from your email system into Salesforce
- » which Salesforce records the email or event is logged against.

This level of control enables you to ensure the most important emails or events are logged and incidental ones are not. The manual control over where emails or events are logged works well with the architecture Franchise Cloud Solutions have created within the Salesforce environment.

To install the Salesforce extension for Office 365

1. From Outlook 365, select the Settings menu and choose to View all Outlook Settings.



2. Choose **Customize Actions**, scroll to the section named **Message Surface**. Check **Get Add-ins** and press **Save**.

	Outlool	k 🎖	O Search	⊡ Teams call 6 1 🛱 🗘 🛞 ? 🖘 (F
	=	Settings	Layout	Customize actions ×
88 / S BB	FR	P. Search settings © © © © © © © © © © Ø	Compose and reply Attachments Rules Sweep Junk email Customize actions Sync email Rowarding Automatic replies Retention policies S//MME Groups	Message surface Those actions and add-ins you want to see when you select a message to read.

3. Within any message, click the **Get Add-ins** button.



4. Within the Add-ins for Outlook box, search for *Salesforce*. A number of different salesforce add-ins will appear. Select the one shown in the following image or choose **Show all results**.

		₽ Search			🖽 Teams call	6]	₽			
	E 🗹 New message	Add-Ins for Outlook	1		Send feedback	×				
	✓ Favorites	Add-ins may access personal information. By turning an a	dd-in on, you agree to its License	ferms and Privacy Policy.	alesforce	\times				
8	Inbox	All Editor's Cho My add-ins We recommen	bice d this great collection of add-i	ns for you to get started.	Veloxy for Outlook and Sal		nt	Wed 29/0	6/2022 7:05	AM
*	John Hanns John Hanns John Hanns Add Gavarite Johne	Administrational and the second secon	tor tribox. tribo	ionity Matrice Turn naise into backs avointies tasks from email. Add a second second second second second and Productive all gover with encrysten, accessing and created email.	Microsoft 365 fimal & Cal. Salesforce Connector Revenue Grid for Salesforc. Salesforce Salesforce Lonce Revent For Approve and manage uset, track approve and manage uset, track approve and manage uset, track approve and manage User Salesforce					
	Active A	Additional personal p	Outlook Inessages in prove Iness	Add that may be request Add port Message ed philo, span, and false ais to Microsoft. Add you for fight and the result Add Add Add Add Add Add Add A	titical particular may be regard Add Sort by: Suggested to Sort by: Suggested to Soft	ryou 🔨				

5. From the **Salesforce Connector** page, press the **Add** button.

	Outlook	₽ Search	다 Teams call 🍕 🖏 다 🛞 ? 🖛 🤇	FS
	Kew message Favorites Inbox Sept litery:	Back Salesforce Medication I Additional purchase may be required By clicking on add, you agree to the add in's <u>Lineaus terms</u> and <u>Privacy, policy</u>	Send feedback ×	
*	 ➢ Sent anno ➢ Drafts Add favorite ✓ Folders ☑ Inbox ➢ Inbox ➢ Sent items ☑ Deleted items ☑ Auté finail 	C	0	
	 Arthve Rotes Conversation His New folder Groups New group Discover groups 	O O	Vesior: 1223.0.0 Relaxed: 45242016 Language: English	

6. We recommend you browse through each of the instructions in the **Get started for Salesforce** box, so you know where to find it and how to use it.

		∠ search		Lat learns call 関	
	😑 🗹 New message	< Back		Send feedback 🗙	
F	✓ Favorites	Salesforce 🐡 Get start	ed for Salesforce	×	
8	🕞 Inbox	By clicking or While reading	emails		
Ð	> Sent Items	Added	in to save content or take an action		nt Wed 29/06/2022 7:05 AM
~	🕅 Drafts	0			
BB	Add favorite				
	✓ Folders			>	
	Inbox				
	🔊 Drafts				
	➢ Sent Items	Add in pieced	to the small and calendar items for each access	train add in	
	Deleted Items	y vooran primeo	o the email and calendar items for easy access	inpin add-in	
	🕼 Junk Email				
	T Archive		• • • • •		
	Notes	Description			
	Conversation His	The Salesforce integration with Outlook lets yo integration is 100% cloud-based with no softw	u experience Salesforce right in Outlook. The are to push, install, or maintain.	Version: 1.232.0.0 Released: 6/28/2016	
	New folder	Add-In Benefits: Visibility		Languages: English	
	✓ Groups	Show more			
	New group	Additional Information			
	Discover groups	This add-in can read or modify the contents of mailbox, and create new items. It can access pe - such as the body, subject, prender, recipients, any message or calendar item. It may send this party service. <u>Precountly asked questions</u> <u>Beoort this add-in</u>	any item in your ssonal information - a tratchments in data to a third-		

7. Dismiss the **Get started for Salesforce** box and note that the add-in has been added.



8. Now when you're in any message you're composing, on the **Send** bar, press the ... button to reveal the menu. Select the **Salesforce** add-in.



9. Ensure you **Pin** the Salesforce add-in pane. Then **Log-in** to Salesforce using the Production environment.



10. At the login prompt, enter your Salesforce **Username** and **Password**. Once logged in, ensure you **Allow** the connection between **Outlook** and your **Salesforce** account.



Installing the Chrome Salesforce extension for GSuite

Twe completed my actions from the audit. Please re and mark them as complete when you are satisfied. Regards. Loryn Jenkins Learning & Development +61 431 661 077

The Salesforce extension for Chrome provides you control as to

- » which emails or events are logged from your email system into Salesforce
- » which Salesforce records the email or event is logged against.

This level of control enables you to ensure the most important emails or events are logged and incidental ones are not. The manual control over where emails or events are logged works well with the architecture Franchise Cloud Solutions have created within the Salesforce environment.

1. Using the **Chrome** browser, open **GMail**. Select the **Customize** menu, and choose **Settings**.

1	•••	M Inbox (6) - loryn	njenkins1@gmai × +			1		v
	$\leftrightarrow \rightarrow c$	C 🔒 mail.google	.com/mail/u/0/#inbox			U	• Q () ¥ •	
	≡	M Gma	ail	Q Search in mail		New Tab TE New Window New Incognito Wi	indow	NT NN ONN
	1	Compose		□ • C :		1–10 o' Downloads Bookmarks		VCHL
		Inbox	6	Primary	ි Promotions ස	Socia Zoom Print	- 150% +	2 **
	☆	Starred		🗌 🚖 support@emea.salesf.	Package FranchiseOps Install Succes	Sful - Y Find		ЖF
	\odot	Snoozed		🗌 🚖 support@emea.salesf. 2	Your new Salesforce security token - We	ve sen Edit	Cut Copy	Paste
	⊳	Sent		🗌 ☆ support@emea.salesf.	Finish resetting your Salesforce passwor	rd - YOL Help		¥,
	⊔ ∽	More		🗌 🚖 franchisecloudsolut.	An instructor-led training session has	s been graded - I	Oct 4	
				🗌 🚖 franchisecloudsolut.	You were assigned to a new course -	Hello Loryn, You	Sep 30	-
	Labe	els	+	🗌 👌 Training Training (.	New material: "Day 1 - Welcome prese	entation (DO N	Sep 30	+
				📄 ☆ Training Training (.	New assignment: "Training workbook	- Hi Loryn,Trai	Sep 30	
				🔲 🚖 Training Training (.	New announcement: "Hello, class sta	rts tomorrow	Sep 30	
				🔲 🕁 Training Training (.	Class invitation: "Loryn Jenkins Copy Fra	nchise inductio	Sep 30	
				🗌 🛱 me	Quote Attached - JN-00618 - Dear Greg	, Please find att	Sep 1	
				0.05 GB of 15 GB used 🔀	Terms - Privacy - Program Policies	Last account activity: 0 r Open in 1 other locat	ninutes ago iion - Details	

2. Chrome opens a tab in which it displays the **Settings** menu. Select the **Extensions** link.

😑 🗩 🔪 Inbox (6) - lorynjenkins1@gmai 🗴 🏚 S	ttings x +	~
$\leftrightarrow \rightarrow \mathbb{C}$ (Chrome chrome://settings		ů 🖈 🗖 🚺 i
Settings	Q. Search settings	
🚊 You and Google	You and Google	
Auto-fill		
Privacy and security		
Appearance		
Q. Search engine		
Default browser	Get Google smarts in Chrome Sync and personalise Chrome across your devices	
U On start-up	Loryn Student 1 v Turn on sync.	
Languages	Sync and Google services	}
▲ Downloads		
+ Accessibility	Manage your Google Account	
🔧 System	Customise your Chrome profile	>
Reset settings	Import bookmarks and settings	•
🌲 Extensions 🗹		
About Chrome		

3. Extensions opens in yet another tab. Select the link to the Chrome Web Store.

Inbox (6) - Iorynjenkins1@gma × Settings	× 🛊 Extensions X +	×
← → C		ė ☆ 🖬 🕚 i
≡ 💿 Extensions	Q. Search extensions	Developer mode
	Find extensions and themes in the Chrome Web Store	

4. A fourth tab opens and displays the Chrome Web Store. In the search box, search for *Salesforce*. Select the Salesforce extension.



5. From the **Salesforce** entry, select the **Add to Chrome** button.

n chrome web store	🔯 lorynjenkins1@gmail.com 🗸
Home > Extensions > Salesforce Salesforce ★★★★★ 1241 ⊙ Productivity 300,000+ users	Add to Chrome
Set of the set of t	•
Compatible with your device Grampatible with your device Work with Salesforce records directly in your small application with the Gmail integration. Experience Salesforce directly in your Gmail and Google Calendar:	Additional Information Construction Offered by Salesforce Version 2.440.2 2.440.2 Update October 14, 2022 Size 1.26M/IB Language English (United

6. From the Add "Salesforce" box, select Add Extension.


7. Salesforce adds the extension to Chrome then provides a popup to confirm that the extension has been added.

🔍 🔍 😽 Indox (6) - Ioryntjenkinst/Bigmi: X 🏚 Settings X 🏚 Extensions X 🔒 Salesforce - Chrome Web Stor: X +	~
← → C (a chrome.google.com/webstore/detail/salesforce/jighhkepijgakdammjldcbnjehfkfmha/related	ů 🖈 😑 🖈 🖬 📵 🗄
chrome web store	Salesforce has been added to X Chrome
Home > Extensions > Salesforce	Use this extension by clicking on this icon. Manage your extensions by clicking Extensions in the Window menu.
Salesforce ***** 1261 () Productivity 300,000+ Listers	To get your extensions on all your computers, turn on sync
Overview Privacy practices Reviews Related	I orynjenkinst@grunt.com

8. Now go back to the tab containing **GMail** and click on the Extensions button, then click the **Pin** button beside the Salesforce label.

•••	M Inbox (6) - lorynjerkinst@gmi X 🕸 S	ettings X 🛛 🛠 Extensions - Salesforce	x 🛪 Extensions	X 📔 👩 Salesforce - Chrome Web Stor: X 📔 🕂	~		~
$\leftarrow \ \rightarrow$	C imail.google.com/mail/u/0/#inbox				1 *	*	🛛 🕕 🗄
=	M Gmail	Q Search in mail			Extensions 2 Full access These extensions can solve ad a	× hange information	l
1	Compose	□ - C :			 Salesforce Manage Extensions 	₽ i Ph	D
		Primary	Promotions	음, Social			
	Inbox 6						•
☆	Starred	🗌 🚖 support@emea.salesf.	Package FranchiseC	ps Install Successful - Your request to	install package "Fra	Oct 19	a
0	Snoozed	🗌 🚖 support@emea.salesf. 2	Your new Salesforce s	ecurity token - We've sent you a new Sal	esforce security tok	Oct 7	•

9. On pinning the **Salesforce** extension, the **Salesforce** button becomes visible in the Chrome extensions tray. Click the **Salesforce** button to show the **Salesforce** pane.

•••	M Inbox (6) - lorynjenkins18gmai X 🏚 Se	ttings 🗙 🗎 🏚 Extensions - Salesforce	🗙 🛛 🌲 Extensions	× 😞 Salesforce - Chrome Web Stor: × +			×
$\leftrightarrow \rightarrow$	C (i mail.google.com/mail/u/0/#inbox				٠	a a 🛀 🗢 🕯	e 🛛 🕚 🗉
≡	M Gmail	Q Search in mail		:	ii ii	0 🕸 🗉	
1	Compose	□ • ♂ :			1–10 of 10 <	> •••	
		Primary	Promotions	a Social			
	Inbox 6		Ŷ.				
☆	Starred	🗌 🚖 support@emea.salesf.	Package FranchiseO	ps Install Successful - Your request to ins	tall package "Fra	Oct 19	a
0	Snoozed	🗌 🚖 support@emea.salesf. 2	Your new Salesforce s	ecurity token - We've sent you a new Sales	orce security tok	Oct 7	

10. The Salesforce extension for Chrome now appears in the sidebar of your web browser. Click on the Salesforce cloud icon to expand the sidebar.

	M Gmail		Q Search in emails	로 ● Active ▼ ⑦ 🕸 !!!	
3	0 Compose		□ • C :	1-10	of 10 < >
			🗌 🛧 Loryn Jenkins	Results from Cash Management audit - Hi Franchise Owner 1 Thanks for participating in the recent C	14 Oct
	Inbox	4	🗌 🛓 FCS Support	We missed you! Let's reschedule a time to chat - Dear Albus, Thank you for submitting an enquiry to	5 Oct
	☆ Starred () Snoozed		🗌 👷 Chatime Franchising	Thank you for your Application - Hi Albus, Thank you for submitting your application with Chatime Fra	5 Oct
25	Sent		🗌 🚖 Loryn Jenkins	Re: Induction log - Planned compliance activity - Great. I'll pencil it in the calendar. Loryn Jenkins 2 On T	15 Sept
	Drafts		🗌 🚖 🦕 Loryn Jenkins	Re: Induction log - Planned compliance activity - Hi there Franchise, We're considering setting up an ap	15 Sept
	✓ More		🗌 🔆 Loryn Jenkins	Re: Induction log - Yes, indeed it did! Thanks, Franchise Owner 1 / Demo Regards, Loryn Jenkins 2 On Th	15 Sept
	Labels	+	🗌 🚖 🥎 Loryn Jenkins	Re: Induction log - Hi there Franchise, This is a test run. Hit me up when you get it, please. Regards, Lory	15 Sept
	Demographic		🗌 🚖 Loryn Jenkins	Re: Induction log - Fabulous Can't wait. Regards, Loryn Jenkins 2 On Thu, Sep 15, 2022 at 2:18 PM Demo	15 Sept
	Related to Salesforce		🗌 🚖 🕤 Loryn Jenkins	Re: Induction log - Hello This email represents automatic bcc in emails. Regards, Loryn Jenkins Operatio	15 Sept
			🗌 🚖 Loryn Jenkins	Re: October 2022 Local Area Marketing - Hi Franchise Owner 1, We've entered the planning stage no	12 Sept
			Using 0.07 GB	Programme Policies Last account activity: 0 r Powered by Google Open in 1 other locat	ninutes ago ion · Details

You have completed the configuration. Now whenever you click on a message, you'll now be able to see the Salesforce add-in, which will allow you to log any email message (or event) against selected records within Salesforce.

표 🔹 Active 🕶 🕐 🛞 💷 🍊 🚺

Mr. Deanne Richards 🔺 (7) Account N., Deanne Richards OPS Field Manager 🔺 (24

Opportunities (1)

Deanne Richards-Account Na... Deanne Richards Close Date: 3303/2022

Related Tasks

Search I ▲ ●

Congratulations

Q Search in emails

Re: Induction log - Planned compliance activity Image
 Same
 A Same

On Thu, 15 Sept 2022 at 15:13, Loryn Jenkins <<u>lorynienkins20gmail.com</u>> wrote: Hi there Franchies,

 Cont
 the Started
 Cont
 the Started
 Cont
 Cont</t

Ve're considering setting up an appointme

This is definitely the way to go.

Franchise Owner 1 / Demo

= M Gmail

Logging email using Salesforce extensions

When you open an email with the Salesforce extension open, the Salesforce extension presents you with the opportunity to log the email into Salesforce against one or more records. By default, you can log the email against a person (Contact) and against another object (typically Account). You can also choose to log an email against a single object if you do not wish to log the email against a person.

Do not log confidential email onto the Franchise Profile Account record

In Operations Management, you should not log email concerning a franchisee into their Franchise Profile Account. If you do this, the franchisee will be able to see the email. You should log confidential email concerning a franchisee into a Management Log record.



All screen shots below show the Chrome extension. The extension for Office 365 is used similarly.

To log an email against a management log (and other related records)

1. With your email open and the Salesforce pane opened, search for the **Management** Log record in the search field.



2. The system will display the **Management Log** record. When you're satisfied it is the right record, press **Log**.

≡	M Gmail	Q Search in emails	荘	• Active • 🕐 🛞 🔠 🍊 🔕
Mail	🖉 Compose			12 of 12 < >
Melei Chat Spaces Meet	Intex ■ Intex ■ Soroad ■ Darts ■ Orats ■ More ■ Labels + Demographic ■ Related to Salesforce	Re: October 2022 Local Area Marketing Records and a state of the state	10 бар 2002, 200 🔥 е. [Selesforce
				Currency Currency 4/06/2022 2:39 pm

3. If you need to add more people to the list, you can search to find other people or other records. Enter your search term in the search box, and choose from the records appearing in the drop-down list.

=	M Gmail	Q Search in emails	#	Active - 🕐 😵 🏢 🍊 🔘
Mail	0 Compose	< 8 0 8 8 0 % b D :		12 of 12 < >
	Inbox 3	Re: October 2022 Local Area Marketing [linkox x] Belated to Salesforce x	e 2	salesforce X Edit Logged Email
121 500000	☆ Starred ③ Snoozed	Loryn Jenkins lorynjenkins2@gmail.com via u2lbspain8cg1tgs.0)9r.6I-9rt/cfeac.ap26.bnc.salesforce.com Hi Franchise Owner 1,	12 Sept 2022, 13:10 🏠 🔶 🗄	Log Emails Faster
C) Ment	i⊳ Sent Drafts	We've entered the planning stage now. Just wait to see what we come up with		Activity is Related To
	Labels + Demographic Related to Salesforce	Negarion, Laryn Jackrisa Operations Munager Lann, Benediarthantiselockdoslutions.com Gell 166 1077 (F. Rapply) (Fforward)		People Select All Select one or more people records. O 095 Field Manager O 095 Field Manager O Image: Select Selection Selec
				Other Select one object to log the email to. Select None to log the email to only the selected people records. Ø None Image: Color-00032 Image: Desrine Richards-
				Cose Date: 31/03/2022

Hint			
You can ch	nange the re	cord type that you're searching for.	
salesforce	>		
× Lo	g Email		
Log Emails Faster	-		
Search Leads	٩		
Accounts			
Campaigns	Unselect All		
Cases	ls.		
Contacts			
Contracts	velopment Manag id Solutions		
Employees			
Legal Entities			
Parties	I to. Select None		
Training Courses	tea peòple		
Action Items	۲		

4. Once you have the right records in the list, check or uncheck the boxes to achieve the right checked items, then press **Submit**.



Congratulations

-1

Ω

The record is now logged against the selected Salesforce records. You can find the email in the records' Activity History.

Composition Compositi	=	M Gmail	Q. Search in emails	辛		• Active • 💿 🛞 🖩 🏼
Part Concord 2022 Local Area Marketing Week Part Area Marketing Part Area Marketing Week Part Area Marketing Part		Compose				12 of 12 <
	Mail Chart Spoors Chart Moor	Conceptible Market Stand Stan	Re: Cettober 2022 Local Area Marketing IIIIIII	v ≎lag1352.00 ĝ	÷ :	

Logging events using Salesforce extensions

If automatic event syncing is not configured from your personal calendar back to the Salesforce calendar (check with your system administrator) you may still be able to manually log events using the Salesforce extension.

Do not log confidential events onto the Franchise Profile Account record

In Operations Management, you should not log email concerning a franchisee into their Franchise Profile Account. If you do this, the franchisee will be able to see the email. You should log confidential email concerning a franchisee into a Management Log record.

To log an event to a Salesforce record

1. In your personal calendar select the event, then search for the appropriate record within the Salesforce search pane.

= 🗾 C	Calendar Today <	> October 2022 -						Q, 🕐 🛞 Week -	= 🍋 G
+	23	24	25	26	27	28	29	D faceb	\ م م ا
GMD+III								- Accert form	
1.84								- IN 00020	
2.444								Adam Smith	•
3.64								LOG-00032	
6.00								Christine Major	
5.00								- Dahn Etton	
5.55									
2.64									
1.10						Maning - Smith - JN-00833			
1.111						L CALIDA	- 1		
10.4M							U		
11.444									
10 PM									
194									

2. With the correct record in view, press the **Log** button.

=	Calendar Today <	> October 2022 -					c	0 🛞 🔤 - 💷 🍊	. 0
+	23	24	25	26	27	28	29	← Record Detail C	
040-11								JN-00620 Required - 895.00 - 0.00	•
2.AN								Details Chalter Activity Related	۰
1.111								South - Maving Franchise FCS - Ringwood North	- +
1.AW								Job Namber JN 66620 Owner	
7.68								Diling Prefix	
1.48						Moving - Solth - JM-00128 8 - 9 13am		Status Planning Customer	
10.4M								Adam Smith Sub Status Quote Sent	
11.AN								Customer Contact Sub Status Reason	
1.050								Request Type	

3. Now press Save.

🗾 Cale	ndar Today <	> October 2022 -					Q	© 🛞 🔤 🗄 🏹
	⁵⁰⁸ 23	24	25	26	27	28	⁵⁸⁷ 29	Log Event
								Manage Activity Associations Salestince automatically related your event to records.
								This email sort available in Salesforce. Either it hasn't been captured jet, or it doesn't meet the oritinis for capturing.
								Activity is Related To
								Note
								Search Accounts 0,
						Moving - Smith - JH 00600 8 - 915an		People Edect one or more people records.
								No recents to display
								Select one object to log the event to. Select None to log the event to only the selected people recerbs.
								⊘ Nane
								Suburb: Ringwood Amount In., \$95:00
								~
								Career Seve



 \cap ľ

Working with Customer Feedback

Understanding customer feedback	.290
Job satisfaction	. 291
How to view job satisfaction survey questions	291
How to remove someone from job satisfaction surveys	. 292
Customer feedback	294
How to view customer complaints and compliments	. 294
How to process new customer complaints and compliments	295
How to resolve customer complaints and compliments	. 299

Understanding customer feedback

Operations Management supports gathering customer feedback. There are two types of customer feedback supported by Operations Management

- » feedback from job satisfaction surveys
- » unsolicited complaints or compliments about the service.

The franchisor may choose to run the job satisfaction customer feedback program by randomly sampling a portion of customers whose jobs have recently completed.

Customer feedback programs are a really useful way of receiving feedback that you may not be able to get any other way. Customers often don't tell you directly what they think face to face. They are often more willing to reveal their true service experience when they complete a survey.

It is in your best interest for as many customers as possible to be included in the customer satisfaction program.

Unsolicited feedback can be received from the online customer feedback web form or by directly contacting the franchisor's call center. All types of feedback provide useful information for growing and improving the business.

Job satisfaction

How to view job satisfaction survey questions

Job satisfaction surveys can be sent to a proportion of customers who have recently had a completed job. You can view the questions asked in this survey by viewing the job satisfaction survey questions.

To view job satisfaction survey questions

1. From the Salesforce menu, select the Survey Questions tab.



● -®			All 🖣	, Q Sear	ch Survey Questic	ons and more				8 ? •	\odot
	Operations Manag	Home	Chatter	Accounts 🗸	Contacts 🗸	Contracts 🗸	Management Logs 🗸 🗸	Invoices 🗸	Survey Questions	✓ More ▼	
٥	Survey Questions Recently Viewed		_ป								
0 items	LIST VIEWS		-2	}					\$ • III •	C'	T
	All		_				✓ QUESTION TYPE	~	ANSWERS	~	
	 Recently Viewed 										

The list of all survey questions appears.

3. Select one of the survey questions to view its details.

•			All	• Q 5	Search Si	urvey Que	stions ar	id more						*		?	Ļ	6
***	Operations Manag	g Home	Chatter	Accounts	~ Ci	ontacts 🚿	✓ Cor	ntracts 🗸	Manag	ement Logs	√ Ir	ivoices 🗸	Survey	Questio	ns 🗸	Mor	е 🕶	
l 8 item	Survey Questions All Is • Sorted by Question Nur	nber • Filtered by a	ll survey questi	ions • Update	d a few se	econds ago								\$ •		C,	Ċ	Y
	QUESTI 1 🗸 🗛	TY V QUES	TION								\sim	QUESTIO	N V	ANSWE	RS		\sim	
1	QN-00000	Did th	ne franchisee	always respo	nd to yo	ur needs a	as discus	sed?				Picklist		Yes, No				•
2	QN-00001	Did th	ne franchisee	turn up on ti	ime?							Picklist		Yes, No				•
3	QN-00002	Was t	he franchisee	always profe	essionally	y presente	d, wearir	ng a uniforr	n and carry	ying a photo	ID?	Picklist		Yes, No				•
4	QN-00003	Hows	atisfied are y	ou with the f	ranchise	e's workm	anship?					Radio Butt	on	1,2,3,4,	5,6,7,8	8,9,10		•
5	QN-00004	Would	d you recomn	nend the frai	nchise to	your frien	nds and f	amily?				Picklist		Yes,No				•
6	QN-00005	Do yo	u have any ot	her feedbac	k you wo	uld like to	share?					Text Area						•
7	QN-00024	How	do you rate									Picklist		1,2,3,4,	5			•
8	QN-00025	How	would you rat	e your overa	ll satisfac	tion with	our servi	ce?				Radio Butt	on	1,2,3,4,	5			•

The detail for the survey question is displayed.

All 🗸 🖉	Search Survey Que	estions and more			* •	? •	6
•••• Operations Manag Home Chatter Accou	nts 🗸 Contacts	✓ Contracts ✓	Management Logs 🗸 🗸	Invoices 🗸	Survey Questions 🗸	More 🔻	
Survey Question QN-00000							
DETAILS RELATED							
Question Number QN-00000		Owner	System Administrator				
Question Type Picklist		Display Or 1	der				
Question Did the franchisee always respond to your needs as discussed?		Active					
Answers 0 Yes, No							

Survey questions can consist of the following question types:

Text Area - allow the customer to enter free-form text Picklist - select one answer from a drop-down list Radio button - select one answer from a list of choices Multi-select - select one or more answers from a list of choices

How to remove someone from job satisfaction surveys

It best that as many customers as possible are included in the customer feedback program. But when a customer requests removal from the program, it is best to remove them.

Ľ

By default **Business Accounts** and **Contacts** are excluded from customer feedback programs.

To prevent an existing customer from being included in a customer feedback survey

- 1. Find and open the customer's Account.
- 2. Scroll down to the Marketing Information section.

•- ®			Q gene							? 🏚 🌲	6
Operations Manag	Home	Chatter	Accounts 🗸	Contacts 🗸	Contracts 🗸	Management Log	5 🗸	Invoices 🗸	Payments 🗸	More 🔻	
Genevieve Mcmullan									+ Follow	Edit Delet	e
\checkmark Marketing Information											
Preferred Communication Channel			Last Job Da	ate							
Unsubscribe			Days Since	Last Job Offer							
Survey Opt Out			Last Survey	Sent							
SMS Unsubscribe 🔹			Days Since O	Last Survey							

3. Place the Account in Edit mode.

•-@		Q gene			** 🖪 ? 🌣 单 🐻
Operations Manag	Home Chatter	Accounts 🗸 Contacts 🗸	Contracts 🗸 Management L	ogs 🗸 Invoices 🗸	Payments 🗸 More 🔻 🖋
😢 Genevieve Mcmullan					+ Follow Edit Delete
✓ Marketing Information					
Preferred Communication Channel		Last Job Date			
Unsubscribe		Days Since Last Job Offer			
Survey Opt Out	_	Last Survey Sent			
SMS Unsubscribe 🔹		Days Since Last Survey O			

4. Check Survey Opt Out, then press Save.

•-®			Q gene					*•	? 🏚 🏚	6
***	Operations Manag	Home Chatter	Accounts 🥆	Contacts 🗸	Contracts 🗸	Management Logs	🗸 Invoices 🗸	Payments 🗸	More 🔻	
F1	Genevieve Mcmullan							+ Follow	Edit Dele	ete
~	Marketing Information									
P	Preferred Communication Channel		Last Job Da	te						
	None	•				i i i i i i i i i i i i i i i i i i i				
	Jnsubscribe		Days Since La	ast Job Offer						
S	Survey Opt Out	A 5	Last Survey	Sent						
		Z								
s	iMS Unsubscribe 🕕		Days Since La O	ast Survey						
~		Cance	Save							

The customer will now be excluded from the customer feedback program.

Customer feedback

How to view customer complaints and compliments

You can view customer feedback responses.

To view customer feedback responses

1. From the Salesforce menu, select Customer Feedback.



The Customer Feedback list displays.

2. Select the All list view, or create your own customer list view.

• - ®				Q Search Cu	istomer Fee	dback	and more					*	•	2?	¢	Ļ	0
• • • • • • • • •	Operations Manag	Home	Chatter	Accounts 🥆	Contact	s 🗸	Contracts	~	Management Log	~	Customer Feed	back	~	More	•		. The P
Ų	Customer Feedback	-		-1										Nev	N	Impo	rt
4 item	IS LIST VIEWS		-2									¢ •		C		¢	T
	All		_					\sim	JOB REFERENCE	\sim	TYPE	\sim	STAT	JS		\sim	
1	Customer Feedback Que	eue									Enquiry		New				•
2	 Recently Viewed 						3		JN-00161		Praise		New				•
3	CFN-00029	Alexander H	lamil	FCS Bondi Be	each	OPS F	ield Manage		JN-00161		Praise		New				•
4	CFN-00000												New				•

3. Select any of the customer feedback records.

•				Q Search Cus	tomer Fee	edback a	nd more				*)? X	ġ ŵ	6
••••	Operations	Manag Home	Chatter	Accounts 🗸	Contact	s 🗸	Contracts 🗸	Management Log	gs 🗸	Customer Feed	lback	~ м	ore 🔻		
Q 10 iter	Customer Feed All ms • Sorted by Cus	oack omer Feedback Number •	Updated 2 min	nutes ago						(\$ \$ -		New C ¹	Impo	ort T
	CUSTON	er fe 🕽 🗸 🗸 full NA	AME N	✓ FRANCHISE	\sim	FEEDB	ACK MAN 🗸	JOB REFERENCE	\sim	TYPE	\sim	STATUS	5	\sim	
1	CFN-000	30 Alistair C	Campbell					JN-00159		Complaint		New			•
2	CFN-000	29 Alexand	er Hamil	FCS Bondi Bea	ich	OPS Fie	eld Manager	JN-00161		Praise		New			•
3	CFN-000	28 Alexand	er Hamil	FCS Bondi Bea	ich	OPS Fie	eld Manager	JN-00161		Praise		New			•
4	CFN-000	27 Tom Jon	ies					JN-00019				New			•
5	CFN-000	26 Tom Jon	ies					JN-00019		Accident		New			•
6	CFN-000	25 Tom Jon	ies	FCS Matraville		OPS Fie	eld Manager	JN-00019		Injury		New			•

4. Now you can view, evaluate and process the customer feedback.

เ ื้อ	Q	Search Customer Feedback and more		*• 🗄 ? 🌣 单 🤅
Operations Manag H	ome Chatter A	ccounts 🗸 Contacts 🗸 Contracts 🗸 Mai	nagement Logs	s ✓ Customer Feedback ✓ More ▼
DETAILS			1	ACTIVITY CHATTER
Customer Feedback Number CFN-00030		Owner 😸 Franchise Cloud Solutions Site Guest User	£	Less Call New Frank New Task Mars
Full Name Alistair Campbell		Status New	_	Log a Call New Event New Task More
		Franchise		Create new Add
Street 50 Campbell Parade		Feedback Manager		Activity Timeline
Suburb Bondi Beach				Next Steps ····· More Steps
PostCode 2026		Job Reference JN-00159		No next steps. To get things moving, add a task or set up
Country 🚯 Australia		Type Complaint		Past Activity
State State SSW		Sub Type		No past activity. Past meetings and tasks marked as don
Contact Phone 0404678922		Job Reference Number JN-00159		show up here.
Email acampbell79@gmail.com.ux				
Date 25/05/2018				
Summary Workman turned up with dirty shoes, t	racked dirt into my o	carpet, failed to clean up after himself.		

How to process new customer complaints and compliments

When a complaint or compliment is received, it needs to be processed for action.

To process a complaint or compliment

1. From the **Customer Feedback** record, place the record in **Edit** mode.

1 0		Q Search Customer Feedback and more		*	🕞 🖪 ? 🌣 🌲 🤅
Operations Manag	Home Chatter	Accounts 🗸 Contacts 🗸 Contracts 🗸	Management Logs	Customer Feedback	✓ * More ▼
DETAILS				ACTIVITY CHA	TTER
Customer Feedback Number CFN-00030 Full Name Alistair Campbell		Owner S Franchise Cloud Solutions Site Guest (Status New	£ 1	Log a Call New Even	t New Task More
Street		Franchise Feedback Manager		Create new	Add
50 Campbell Parade ^{Suburb} Bondi Beach				Activity Timeline Next Steps	C ^I Expand All More Steps
PostCode 2026		Job Reference JN-00159		No next steps. To get things	moving, add a task or set up geting.
Australia State NSW		Complaint Sub Type	/	Past Activity	ings and tasks marked as don
Contact Phone 0404678922		Job Reference Number JN-00159		show	up here. Dad More Past Activities
Email acampbell79@gmail.com.ux					
Date 25/05/2018					
Summary Workman turned up with dirty sh	oes, tracked dirt into	my carpet, failed to clean up after himself.			

2. Identify the Franchise to whom this feedback belongs.

• ` @	Q Search Customer Feedback and more	*• 🗄 ? 🌣 🖡 🐻
•••• Operations Manag Home Chatter	Accounts V Contacts V Contracts V Management Lo	ogs ∨ Customer Feedback ∨ * More ▼
DETAILS		ACTIVITY CHATTER
Customer Feedback Number CFN-00030 Full Name	Owner Franchise Cloud Solutions Site Guest User Status	Log a Call New Event New Task More
Alistair Campbell	New Tranchise 5	Create new Add
Street	bondi beach Q Q "bondi beach" in Accounts	Activity Timeline
Suburb Bondi Beach	FCS Bondi Beach 0411123456 + New Account	No next steps. To get things moving, add a task or set up a meeting.

3. Identify what type of feedback this is. Check the Type against the Summary. Assess which Sub Type this is and set the Sub Type.

oporationo managin		
DETAILS		ACTIVITY CHATTER
Customer Feedback Number CFN-00030 Full Name	Owner Franchise Cloud Solutions Site Guest User Status	Log a Call New Event New Task More
Alistair Campbell	New	Create new Add
	Franchise	
	FCS Bondi Beach ×	Activity Timeline
Street	Feedback Manager	
50 Campbell Parade	Search People Q	Next Steps More Step
Suburb		No next steps. To get things moving, add a task or set u
Bondi Beach		meeting.
PostCode	Job Reference	Past Activity
2026	№ JN-00159 ×	No past activity. Past meetings and tasks marked as do
Country 🕕	Туре	Load More Past Activities
Australia	Complaint 👻	
State ()	Sub Type	
NSW	None	
Contact Phone	✓None	
0404678922	Workmanship 2	
Email	Behaviour	
acampbell79@gmail.com.ux	No Call Back	
	Driving	
Date	No Show	
25/05/2018	NO SHOW	

4. Set the manager responsible for taking action on the feedback in Feedback Manager.

B	Q Search Customer Feedback and more	★ ▼ 日 ? 卒 •
Operations Manag Home	Chatter Accounts V Contacts V Contracts V Manage	ment Logs ∨ Customer Feedback ∨ * More ▼
DETAILS		ACTIVITY CHATTER
Customer Feedback Number	Owner Franchise Cloud Solutions Site Cuest Llear	
	Hanchise Cloud Solutions Site Guest Oser	Log a Call New Event New Task Mor
Full Name	Status	
Alistair Campbell	New	Create new Add
	Franchise	
	ECS Pondi Ponch	
		Activity Timeline T C ⁴ Expand
Street	Feedback Manager	Next Change
50 Campbell Parade	ops	Next Steps
Suburb	Q "ops" in People	No next steps. To get things moving, add a task or se
Bondi Beach		meeting.
PostCode	OPS Compliance Manager	Past Activity
2026	OPS Head Office Manager	No past activity. Past meetings and tasks marked as
		show up here.
Country (1)		Load More Past Activities
Australia	OPS Operations Manager	
State 🕚	OPS Administrator	
NGW	Operations Administrator	

5. Now update the Status to Assigned.

B	All 👻 🔍 Search Customer Feedback and more	★▼ 🖽 ? 🌣 单 💽
Operations Manag	Home Chatter Accounts 🗸 Contacts 🗸 Co	ontracts V Customer Feedback V More V
DETAILS		ACTIVITY CHATTER
Customer Feedback Number CFN-00030	Owner Franchise Cloud Solutions Site Guest User	Log a Call New Event New Task More
Full Name	Status	
Alistair Campbell	New	Create new Add
	None 2	Filters: All time • All activities • All types
Street	Assigned	Refresh Expand All
50 Campbell Parade	In Progress	Next Steps More Steps
Suburb	Resolved	No next steps. To get things moving, add a task or set up a meeting.
Bondi Beach	Closed	Past Activities
PostCode	On Hold	
	Cancel Save X	No past activity. Past meetings and tasks marked as done show up here.

How to resolve customer complaints and compliments

It is good practice to promptly resolve customer feedback records.

-	
🥚 д	ctivity features are ideal for supporting this process
= ^	ouvry router to a for supporting the process.
-	
	I og a Call New Fyent New Tack Fmail
	Create new Add
A	ctivity Timeline
N	ext Steps
	No next store. To set thisses moving add a task or set up a
	meeting.
Pa	ast Activity
	No past activity. Past meetings and tasks marked as done show up here.
	Load More Past Activities 🔻
<u> </u>	nce customer feedback has been assigned to a Feedback Manager inac-
	on within a certain period of time will result in an escalation email being sent

to the manager of the responsible person. Resolving the feedback item within the escalation period will prevent escalation notifications.

To resolve a customer feedback record

- 1. Work with the customer to resolve the issue to their satisfaction.
- 2. Set the Status to Resolved or Closed.

CHAPTER 12

Working with the Job Booking Form

How to change job types	. 301
How to change how you heard of us	.302
How to add or remove fields	303

How to change job types

The standard job booking form begins with a list of job types your customers can request of you. The job types are populated from Salesforce. You can add new job types or prevent current job types from appearing.

To add a new job type

- 1. From the app selector, search for **Job Types** and select the **Job Types** app.
- 2. Switch the List View to All and pin it.
- 3. Press the **New** button.
- 4. Complete the New Job Type dialog, including checking the Active checkbox then pressing Save. The New Job Type is now visible on the Job Booking form.

To remove a job type from displaying in the Job Booking form

- 1. From the app selector, search for **Job Types** and select the **Job Types** app.
- 2. Switch the List View to All and pin it.
- 3. Click on the chosen **Job Type Number**.
- 4. From the Job Type Details page, uncheck the Active checkbox and press Save. The selected Job Type no longer displays within the Job Booking form.

How to change how you heard of us

The standard job booking form contains a drop-down lists consisting of "ways the customer heard about us". This drop-down is populated from **Sources** records.

To add a Source to the how you heard of us list

- 1. From the app selector, search for **Sources** and select the **Sources** app.
- 2. Switch the List View to All and pin it.
- 3. Press the **New** button.
- 4. Work through the New Source dialog box, ensuring it is named, Active. Press Save when complete.

To switch off a Source

- 1. From the app selector, search for **Sources** and select the **Sources** app.
- 2. Switch the List View to All and pin it.
- 3. Select the **Source Name**.
- 4. From the Source Details page, uncheck the Active checkbox. The Source no longer appears on the Job Booking form.

How to add or remove fields

Fields are hard-coded in the form. To add or remove fields, lodge an *Admin as a Ser*vice request through <u>Service Desk</u>.

 \mathbf{C}

Working with Activity Lists

Understanding activity lists	306
Applying an activity list	307
Working with activity list tasks	310

Understanding activity lists

Implementing a repeatable process is essential to achieving high productivity. Activity lists are a big help in implementing this repeatable process.

At its heart, an activity list contains a list of tasks. The tasks can be automatically assigned to individuals to be completed within a certain time-frame.

Using an activity list ensures that all the same tasks get done in the same way each and every time.



While most activity lists are created manually, during implementation your company may have chosen to have an activity list automatically created. Check with your implementation notes.

Applying an activity list

An activity list is attached to a specific type of record. When that record type has activity lists available, the **Activity Lists** component appears.



To apply an activity list:

1. From the Activity List component, press Add List.

•••®	All 👻 🔍 Search Acco	unts and more		★▼ 🖬 ?	÷ (6
Operations Manag Home Chatter Ac	counts v Contacts v Contracts v N	lanagement Logs 🗸 Invoices 🗸	Payments 🗸 Expe	enses ∨ Jobs ∨ Job Offers ∨ More v	
Account FCS Maroubra A				+ Follow Edit Create	New Job
DETAILS RELATED				ACTIVITY CHATTER	
Account Name FCS Maroubra	Account Owner			Log a Call New Suppt New Tack Empil	
Parent Account FCS NSW	Email bill.smith@gmail.com				
Status Active	Phone 0426272390			Create new	Add
Status Reason	Fax			Filters: All time • All activities • All ty	pes 🔻
Inactive Reason	Cell Member Role			Refresh	Expand All
Field Manager	Primary Cell Group		N	Next Steps	
Timezone	Secondary Cell Group		P	No next steps. To get things moving, add a task or set up a mee Past Activities	.ting.
Next Review Due Date 31/08/2018			,	Job Offer JON-00025 7:00 AM 07/10/2	2017 🔻
Next Review Date				Integration User sent an email to Bill Smith	
✓ Business Information					ties 🔻
Legal Entity Name Smith Services Ptv Ltd	Business Number				
Trading Name	Company Number 66123456666			Activity Lists	Add List
Operating Structure				NAME NUMBER OF TASKS COMPLETED TASKS	

The **New Activity List** dialog box appears.

2. Select an available Template.

*Activity List Name *Template Enter your Activity List name Enter your Activity List name Growth Year Plate Growth Year Plate		New Activity List		
0017F00000EyWVBQA3	* Activity List Name Enter your Activity List name * Related Record Id 0017F00000EyWVBQA3	*Template		
Cancel Save			Cancel	Save

3. Enter the Activity List Name and press Save.

New Activity List			
* Activity List Name	*Template		
Maroubra Growth Initiative	Business Growth Template	•	
* Related Record Id			
0017F00000EyWVBQA3			
		Cancel Save	

The Activity List is attached to the record and at least some of the tasks from the list appear within Next Steps.

Operations Manag Home Chatter Accounts	All Q. Search Accounts and more Contacts V Contracts V Management Logs V Invoices V	Expenses v Jobs v Job Offers v More v
Account Account Account Account Account Account Account Account Account Active Status Reason Active		+ Follow Edit Create New Job
DETAILS RELATED	Account Owner	ACTIVITY CHATTER
Parent Account FCS NSW Status	Email billsnith@gmail.com Phone	Log a Call New Event New Task Email Create new Add
Active Status Reason	0426272390 Fax Call Mamber Bela	Filters: All time • All activities • All types
Field Manager	Primary Cell Group	Next Steps More Steps
Timezone 	Secondary Cell Group	Eli Smith has an upcoming Task Eli Smith has an upcoming Task Eli Schib har as upcoming Task Eli Schib har as upcoming Task
Next Review Date v Business Information		Past Activities
Legal Entity Name Smith Services Pty Ltd	Business Number 123456666	> Job Offer JON-00025 7:00 AM 07/10/2017 ▼ Integration User sent an email to Bill Smith
Trading Name Operating Structure	Company Number 66123456666	Load More Past Activities 🔻
Address Information		Activity Lists Add List
Billing Address Level 1, Suite 4/166 Rd Maroubra NSW 2035 Australia	Shipping Address	NAME NUMBER OF TASKS COMPLETED TASKS Maroubra Growth Initiative 5 0

The steps within the activity list are now ready to be completed.

Working with activity list tasks

Tasks generated by an activity list appear in the object's **Activity Next Steps**. They also appear on the Salesforce home page of the task owner, under **Today's Tasks**.

•**8	All 🐱 🔍 Search Accounts and more	** 🖬 ? 🖡 👼
Operations Manag Home Chatter Accounts V	Contacts \checkmark Contracts \checkmark Management Logs \checkmark Invoices \checkmark Payments \checkmark	Expenses 🗸 Jobs 🗸 Job Offers 🗸 More 🔻 🖋
Account FCS Maroubra A Billing Address Status Status Resson Level 1, Suite 4/166 Rd Active Maroubra NSW 2035		+ Follow Edit Create New Job
Australia		
DETAILS RELATED	Account Dunner	ACTIVITY CHATTER
ACCOUNT Manne FCS Maroubra Pros NSW	Email bill smith	Log a Call New Event New Task Email
Status Active	Phone 0426272390	Create new Add
Status Reason	Fax	Filters: All time - All activities - All types
Field Manager	Primary Cell Group	Next Steps
Timezone 	Secondary Cell Group	Bill Smith has an upcoming Task Torus New Franchises Information For
31/08/2018 Next Review Date		Bill Smith has an upcoming Task
		Past Activities
✓ Business Information		
Legal Entity Name Smith Services Pty Ltd	Business Number 123456666	Job Offer JON-00025 7:00 AM 07/10/2017 Integration User sent an email to Bill Smith
Trading Name	Company Number 66123456666	Load More Past Activities 🔻
Operating Structure Company		
✓ Address Information		Activity Lists Add List
Billing Address Level 1, Suite 4/166 Rd Maroubra NSW 2035 Australia	Shipping Address	NAME NUMBER OF TASKS COMPLETED TASKS Maroubra Growth Initiative 5 0

To view more details about an individual task:

» Click the task arrow to reveal more information.

Operations Manag Home Chatter Accounts >>	All + Q. Search Accounts and more Contacts v Contracts v Management Logs v Invoices v	× Expenses ∨ Jobs ∨ Job Offers ∨ More ▼ ✓
FCS Maroubra		+ Follow Edit Create New Job
Billing Address Status Status Reason Level 1, Suite 4/166 Rd Active Maroubre NSW 2035 Australia		
DETAILS RELATED		ACTIVITY CHATTER
Account Name FCS Maroubra Parent Account	Account Owner	Log a Call New Event New Task Email
FCS NSW Status Active	bill.smith@gmail.com Phone 0426272390	Create new Add
Status Reason	Fax	Filters: All time • All activities • All types
Field Manager	Cell Member Kole	Next Steps More Steps
OUS Held Manager Timezone	Secondary Cell Group	Kew Franchisee Induction course 04/07
Next Review Due Date 31/08/2018		Description The franchisee owner is booked into the induction training course.
Next Review Date		Sill Smith has an upcoming Task
Legal Entity Name	Business Number	Past Activities
Smith Services Pty Ltd Trading Name	123456666 Company Number 66123456666	Job Offer JON-00025 7:00 AM 07/10/2017 Integration User sent an email to Bill Smith
Operating Structure Company		Load More Past Activities
✓ Address Information		
Billing Address Level 1, Suite 4/166 Rd Maroubra NSW 2035	Shipping Address	Activity Lists Add List NAME NUMBER OF TASKS COMPLETED TASKS
Australia		Maroubra Growth Initiative 5 0

To reveal more tasks:

» Press More Steps.

6 -0	All 🐱 🔍 Search Accounts and more	** 🖽 ? 🐥 🐻
Operations Manag Home Chatter Account	is V Contacts V Contracts V Management Logs V Invoices V Payments V	✓ Expenses ✓ Jobs ✓ Job Offers ✓ More ▼
Account FCS Maroubra		+ Follow Edit Create New Job
Billing Address Status Status Reason Level 1, Suite 4/365 Rd Active Maroubra NKW 2035 Australia		
DETAILS RELATED		ACTIVITY CHATTER
Account Name FCS Maroubra Parent Account	Account Owner	Log a Call New Event New Task Email
ELS NSW Status Active	Phone 0426272390	Create new Add
Status Reason	Fax	Filters: All time - All activities - All types Y Refresh Expand All
Field Manager	Primary Cell Group	Next Steps More Steps
Timezone	Secondary Cell Group	Issue Operations & OH&S Documents 04/07 Bill Smith has an upcoming Task
Next Review Due Date 31/08/2018		E In the set of the set
Next Review Date		Description The franchisee owner is booked into the induction training course.
Business Information Legal Entity Name	Business Number	Issue New Franchisee Information For Tomorrow Isill Smith has an upcoming Task
Smith Services Pty Ltd Trading Name	123456666 Company Number 65120266666	l Past Activities
Operating Structure Company	/	Job Offer JON-00025 7.00 AM 07/10/2017 Integration User sent an email to Bill Smith
✓ Address Information		Load More Past Activities
Billing Address Level J, Suite 4/166 Rd Maroubra NSW 2035 Australia	Shipping Address	Activity Lists Add lie
✓ Invoice Summary Information		NAME NUMBER OF TASKS COMPLETED TASKS
Tax Exempt	Has Overdue Balance	Maroubra Growth Initiative 5 0

To mark a task as complete:

» Check the task check box.

•°@	All 👻 🔍 Search Accounts and more	* 🖬 ? 单 🐻
Operations Manag Home Chatter Accounts	✓ Contacts ∨ Contracts ∨ Management Logs ∨ Invoices ∨ Payments ∨	Expenses ∨ Jobs ∨ Job Offers ∨ More ▼
FCS Maroubra		+ Follow Edit Create New Job
Billing Address Status Status Reason Level 1, Suite 4/166 Rd Active Maroubra NSW 2035 Australia		
DETAILS RELATED		ACTIVITY CHATTER
Account Name FCS Maroubra	Account Owner	Log a Call New Event New Task Email
FCS NSW Status Status	Phone	Create new Add
Active Status Reason		Filters: All time • All activities • All types
Inactive Reason	Cell Member Role	Refresh Expand All
Field Manager	Primary Cell Group	Next Steps More Steps
Timezone	Secondary Cell Group	Sill Smith has an upcoming Task
Next Review Due Date 31/08/2018		New Franchisee Induction course 04/07 Bill Smith has an upcoming Task
Next Review Date		Description The franchisee owner is booked into the induction training course.
✓ Business Information		> 🔚 🗌 Issue New Franchisee Information For Tomorrow 💌
Legal Entity Name Smith Services Pty Ltd	Business Number 123456666	Bill Smith has an upcoming Task
Trading Name	Company Number 66123456666	Past Activities
Operating Structure Company		Job Offer JON-00025 7:00 AM 07/10/2017 Integration User sent an email to Bill Smith
✓ Address Information		Load More Past Activities
Billing Address Level 1, Suite 4/166 Rd Maroubra NSW 2035 Australia	Shipping Address	Artivity Lists
✓ Invoice Summary Information		NAME NUMBER OF TASKS COMPLETED TASKS
Tax Exempt	Has Overdue Balance	Maroubra Growth Initiative 5 0

When the task has been checked, the task name is struck out to indicate that it has been completed.

When you reload a record with a completed task, the completed task appears within the **Past Activity**.

♣ ∰ Operations Manag Home Chatter Accounts ∨	All • Q. Search Accounts and more Contacts v Contracts v Management Logs v Invoices v	Expenses v Jobs v Job Offers v More v 🖌
Account FCS Maroubra Billing Address Status Status Reason Level 1, Suite 4/166 Rd Active Maroubra NSW 2035		+ Follow Edit Create New Job
Australia DETAILS RELATED Account Name FCS Manouhra	Account Owner	ACTIVITY CHATTER
Parent Account FCS NSW Status Active Status Reason	Email billsmith@gmail.com Phone 0426272390	Log a Call New Event New Task Email Create new Add
Inactive Reason Field Manager	Cell Member Role Primary Cell Group	Filters: All time - All activities - All types Y Refresh Expand All Next Steps More Steps
Timezone Next Review Due Date 31/08/2018 Next Review Date	Secondary Cell Group	Ell Smith has an upcoming Task Ell Smith has an upcoming Task Ell Smith has an upcoming Task Ell Smith has an upcoming Task
Business Information Lagal Entity Name	Busines Number	Past Activities > Image: Issue Operations & OH&S Documents 04/07 Billi Smith had a Task 04/07
Smith Services PQ Ltd Trading Name Operating Structure Company	23930000 Company Number 66123456666	Job Offer JON-00025 7:00 AM 07/10/2017 Integration User sent an email to Bill Smith Load More Past Activities
Address Information	Shipping Address	Achille Lide Addite
Level 1, Suite 4/166 Rd Maroubra NSW 2035 Australia		Activity Lists Add List NAME NUMBER OF TASKS COMPLETED TASKS Maroubra Growth Initiative 5 1

#
$\overline{}$ r Ц

Working with Reports

Understanding reports	318
Standard reports	321
Compliance reports	.321
Franchise Operations Reports	.321
Head Office Reports	322
SMS Management Reports	.322
DocuSign reports	.323
How to export a report	.325
How to print a report	327

Understanding reports

A report provides a summary of your records filtered by specific criteria at a point in time. Reports provide a great way to remain aware of the overall performance of your business.

Operations Management ships with a range of reports tailored to operations.

To discover available reports

1. From the Salesforce menu, choose **More**, then choose **Reports**.



The recent reports folder appears. If you have yet to use a report, this will be blank.

2. To see the different types of reports, go to the All Folders folder.

• - ®			Q Search	n Reports and mo	ore			*• 8 ?	? 🌲 👩
•••• Operations	s Manag но	me Chatter	Accounts 🗸	Contacts 🗸	Contracts 🗸	Management Logs 🗸	r Invoices 🗸 Reports	∽ More ▼	ľ
Reports Recent 1 item								N	ew Report
REPORTS	REPORT NAME	ſ	DESCRIPTION			FOLDER	LAST MODIFIED B	(
Recent	Payments by Month	n				Finance Report	ts Integration User		•
Created by Me									
Private Reports									
Public Reports									
All Reports									
FOLDERS									
Created by Me									
Shared with Me									
All Folders									
FAVORITES									
All Favorites									

There you will see each of the different categories of report that come with Operations Management.

3. Select any one of the report folders.

•••®		Q Search Reports and mo	re	*	🛛 ? 🔺 🐻
•••• Operations	Manag Home Chatter A	Accounts 🗸 Contacts 🗸	Contracts 🗸 Management Logs	✓ Invoices ✓ Reports ✓ Meta	ore 🔻 🦽
Reports All Folders 4 items • Sorted by Fold	ler Name				New Report
REPORTS	FOLDER NAME	CREATED BY	LAST MODIFIED BY	CREATED ON	
Recent	Compliance Reports	Integration User	Integration User	25/09/2017 10:03 AM	•
Created by Me	Finance Reports	Integration User	Integration User	25/09/2017 10:03 AM	•
Private Reports	Franchise Operations Reports	Integration User	Integration User	25/09/2017 10:03 AM	•
All Deports	Franchisee Owner Reports	Integration User	Integration User	25/09/2017 10:03 AM	▼
FOLDERS					
Created by Me					
Shared with Me					
All Folders					
FAVORITES					
All Favorites					

Now you can see the reports within that folder.

• - ®			Q Search	n Reports and mo	ore						*	8?	.	0
•••• Operations	s Manag Home	Chatter	Accounts 🗸	Contacts 🗸	Contracts 🗸	Management Log	s 🗸	Invoices	~	Reports	✓ Mor	re 🔻		
Reports All Folders > F 4 items · Sorted by Rep	inance Reports											Net	w Report	
REPORTS	REPORT NAME		DESCRIPTIC	IN		FO	LDER		LA	ST MODIFIE	D BY			
Recent	Expenses by Franchise					Fin	ance Re	ports	Int	tegration Us	er		•	
Created by Me	Expenses by Week					Fin	ance Re	ports	Int	tegration Us	er		•	
Private Reports	HO Ops Monthly Sales	FYTD				Fin	ance Re	ports	Int	tegration Us	er		•	
Public Reports	Payments by Month					Fir	ance Re	ports	Int	tegration Us	er		•	
All Reports														
FOLDERS														
Created by Me														
Shared with Me														
All Folders														
FAVORITES														
All Favorites														

4. Open up some of the reports and look at them. You will begin to understand the range of reports available to you. After you have browsed around for a while, the Recent reports folder will contain all the reports you have opened and looked at recently.

•-B		Q Search Reports and more		*• 🖬 ? 单 👼
Operations	Manag Home Chatter A	ccounts 🗸 Contacts 🗸 Contracts 🗸	Management Logs 🗸 Invoices 🗸	✓ Reports ✓ More ▼
Reports Recent 4 items				New Report
REPORTS	REPORT NAME	DESCRIPTION	FOLDER	LAST MODIFIED BY
Recent	Payments by Month		Finance Reports	Integration User
Created by Me	HO Ops Monthly Sales FYTD		Finance Reports	Integration User
Private Reports	Expenses by Week		Finance Reports	Integration User
Public Reports	Expenses by Franchise		Finance Reports	Integration User
All Reports				
FOLDERS				
Created by Me				
Shared with Me				
All Folders				
FAVORITES				
All Favorites				

Standard reports

While you can always create your own reports, the reports that ship with Operations Management are summarized below.

Compliance reports

Report Name	Description
Activated by Month	A summary of contracts organized by activation month, together with key details that characterize contract status.
Activated Con- tracts by Type	A summary of contracts organized by type, together with key details that characterize contract status.
Compliance - 14 Days from Issue	Listing all contract documents whose signing date is less than 14 days after documents issued vs those contracts whose signing date is greater than 14 days after documents issued.
Deactivated by Month	A summary of contracts organized by deactivation month, together with key details that characterize contract status.
Deactivation in Progress	A summary of contracts with the status <i>Deactivation in Progress</i> , together with key details that characterize contract status.
Deposit Due	A list of franchise profile accounts owing money on the initial deposit.
Open Con- tracts by Franchise	An historical listing of contracts by franchisee, with a histogram of the number of contracts issued to each franchisee.
Open Con- tracts by Type	A histogram showing contract start date, secondarily grouped by con- tract type.
Signed Agree- ments by Type	The current contracts whose Status is Signed.
Upcoming renewals - Next 3 Months	Contracts due for renewal in the next three months.
Upcoming renewals - Next 6 Months	Contracts due for renewal in the next six months.

Franchise Operations Reports

Report Name	Description
Job Request Con- version	Job requests categorized by Converted and Unconverted Status.

Report Name	Description
Job Requests in and out	Number of Job Offers by month in Owned and Unowned Ter- ritories.
Pending Quotes & Work in Pro- gress	Summary of Job Plans that are pending a decision from the cus- tomer.
Quote Conversion %	Number and Value of Jobs that are <i>Converted</i> vs. those that are <i>Unconverted</i> .

Head Office Reports

Report Name	Description
Active Territories by State	Owned Territories by State.
All Jobs by State & Source	Listing of jobs, statuses, locations and owners by state and source.
All Jobs Last Week ESB	Listing of jobs, sources, statuses, locations and owners along the Eastern Sea Board of Australia.
Ceasing Franchisees	Franchisees whose contracts are in the process of being deac- tivated.
Job Offer Lead- erboard by State Last Week	Listing of Job Offers by Franchisee and State in the last seven days.
Job Offers Last Week ESB	Listing of Job Offers by State in the last seven days along the Eastern Sea Board of Australia.
Jobs Historical Trends	Job details grouped by Period and State.
Self Generated Work Last Week	Jobs that did not come from the website or call center in the last seven days.
Territory Only by Billing State	Territories listed by billing state.
Zero Job Offers by State	Listing of franchises receiving no Job Offers within the last seven days.

SMS Management Reports



Ships with the SMS Management option.

Report Name	Description
Journey Actions with Participant Actions	Completed vs Queued Participant Actions by Journey Action
Journeys with Actions	Journeys with at least one Journey Participant
Journeys with Par- ticipants	Count of Journey Action Names by Type, ordered by Journey Action Sequence.

DocuSign reports

~1

DocuSign is available for custom implementations only.

Report Name	Description
Average Days to Complete	The average days to completion of all DocuSign Envelopes sent.
Average Days to Complete by Sender	The average Days to completion of all DocuSign Envelopes by Sender
Average Hours to Complete	The average hours to completion of all DocuSign Envelopes sent.
Average Hours to Complete by Sender	The average number of minutes to completion and envelope by sender.
Average Minutes to Complete	The average minute to complete all envelopes sent.
Average Minutes to Complete by Sender	The average number of minutes to complete and envelope by sender.
Envelope Events this Month	Total envelope events this month.
Envelope Events this Quarter	Total envelope events this quarter.
Envelope Events YTD	Total envelope events this year to date.
Envelopes by Sender this Month	Total envelopes sent this month by sender.
Envelopes by Sender this Quarter	Total envelopes sent this quarter by sender.

Report Name	Description
Envelopes by Sender YTD	Total envelopes sent this year to date by sender.
In Progress Envel- opes	Envelopes sent and not voided, deleted or completed.
In Progress Envel- opes Older than 72 Hours	All envelopes sent and not completed, deleted or voided 72 or more hours ago.
Percent Complete by Sender	The percent of all envelopes sent that are complete by sender.
Top Closers	Senders who have sent the most envelopes that are completed.
Top Senders	Senders with the highest sent envelope counts.

How to export a report

You can export the results of a report to Excel or a comma delimited format.

To export report results

1. From any report, press the **Show more** button then choose **Export**.

• - ®				Q Search	Reports and m	ore				(* - 6	? 🏚	6
•••• Operations	Manag	Home	Chatter	Accounts 🗸	Contacts 🗸	Contracts N	 Managem 	ent Logs 🗸	Invoices 🗸	Reports 🗸	More	•	
HO Ops	Monthly Sal	es FYTD								• •	G 🏟	Edit	•
Total Records 177									-			Save As Save	
												Export	
						Sum of A	mount					Delete	
	0 10κ	20к	30к	40ĸ	50ĸ	60к 70	к 80к	90к	100ĸ	110к 1	20к	130к :	L40ĸ
September 2017													
October 2017													
December 2017													
January 2018													
February 2018													
March 2018													
April 2018													
May 2018													

The Export dialog box appears.

2. Choose between a Formatted Report and a Details Only report.

Export

Formatted Report	Details Only		
Export the report as it appears in Salesforce, including the report header, groupings, and filter details.	Export only the detail rows. Use this to do further calculations or for uploading to other systems.		
rmat			
Excel Format .xlsx	•		
		Cancel	Export

A **Formatted Report** will appear similar to what you see on-screen and is useful for printing or pasting into emails and reports. A **Details Only** report is preferable for performing further calculations.

3. If you choose Details Only, choose the format you need (*Excel format .xls* or *Comma Delimited .csv*) then press **Export**.

port view		4
Formatted Report	Details Only	
Export the report as it appears in Salesforce, including the report header, groupings, and filter details.	Export only the detail rows. Use this to do further calculations or for uploading to other systems.	
rmat	Encoding	
Excel Format .xls	▼ ISO-8859-1	(General US & Western Europ

You will find the exported data in your browser's Downloads folder.

How to print a report

To print a report

- 1. Export the report. *See* "How to export a report" on page 325.
- 2. Print it using Excel.

S

Accessing Help and Support

Product Documentation	330
Knowledge Base	.330
Contacting Customer Support	.331
Raising Service Requests	.331
Granting Account Login Access	. 339

Product Documentation

Congratulations for starting along the pathway to accelerate your operations using Franchise Cloud Solutions products. As we move through the implementation journey, you're likely to have questions and need support along the way.

The first port of call should always be our comprehensive video tutorials and user guides.

Knowledge Base

Franchise Cloud Solutions maintains a Knowledge Base covering

- » Release Notes
- » Tips & Tricks
- » Configuration instructions
- » Error messages

Customers can access the Knowledge Base at any time.

Contacting Customer Support

Customers can access our customer support team between the hours of 8:30 am and 5:30 pm Monday through Friday. Your project manager will add key personnel to our Service Desk to allow them to raise issues and request assistance.

Customers can also reach our support team by sending email to

» service@franchisecloudsolutions.com

Raising Service Requests

When you log into the Service Desk, you're shown a list of the types of service requests you can raise with us. We ask you to choose the most appropriate request type so that we can help you most effectively.



From this menu, select the type of request you're wanting to raise. Each type of service request is explained below.

Request Type	Comments
How do I	We provide comprehensive videos and user guides for all our products. These materials cover all standard and basic procedures. However, there will still be a range of things it doesn't cover, such as site-specific customizations and advanced uses. For these types of requests, we encourage you to ask our support specialists how to do something.

Request Type	Comments
Technical sup- port	If you are the site administrator and need help configuring the product, we encourage you to reach out to us for assistance with technical support.
Report a bug	If you see behavior that you believe contradicts the documentation or performs in a manner against your expectations, feel free to report a bug.
Suggest an improvement	When there is an existing piece of functionality that you believe could be improved, feel free to suggest it here.
Suggest a new feature	When you would like to the system be extended to cover a new area of functionality, we're keen to receive your input. (We can't always promise that we implement every feature request promptly but we do regularly review customer feature requests and prioritize them based on business need.)
Licensing and billing questions	For questions related to licensing and billing, please complete this type as our licensing specialists can deal with it.
Other questions	For any questions not falling into one of the above-listed categories, feel free to use this request type.

How to Suggest Improvements or Features

We're always keen to better understand how you work and what your needs are. When you request a new feature, we're always keen to understand how you do business today. We would like to know:

- 1. Your current business process. What do you do? What are you business rules?
- 2. How your team members achieve the task today.
- 3. How you reckon the task could best be achieved in our software.



How to Report a Bug

Franchise Cloud Solutions implementations come with a suite of test cases to assist you with UAT. Each UAT case provides a set of steps that you should be able to follow to completion.



If a test fails, then congratulations!, you have just found a bug!

There may be several different reasons for bugs. It might be:

- » a browser bug
- » a problem with our code
- » an issue with test data or templates
- » a documentation bug
- » an issue with the test suite
- » or, perhaps, something else entirely.

Whatever the case may be, reporting it well and in a timely fashion will help us resolve the issue as soon as possible.

What is a useful bug report?

When you do find bugs that need fixing, we're keen to get them resolved as soon as possible. What really helps with this is getting all the information we need to identify the issue.

> Some of this depends on getting high quality information from you. Here's how you can help us help you!

Within our Help Desk, you can see all the service requests that your organization has filed. We'd appreciate it if you'd check that your bug hasn't already been raised.

When you log a bug, please remember to describe only a single bug in a service request. **Feel free to raise as many issues as you need!**

Here are some tips on writing a good bug report.

How to write a good bug report

Write a **Summary** that outlines the bug as best you can describe it.

Within the Detail section, we need the following information

- 1. What happened? What concrete things did you observe?
- 2. Steps to replicate? List each page, field, data value and button pressed to replicate.
- 3. What you expected the system to do (if there was no error).
- 4. The error that you observed.
- 5. Your browser and operating system.
- 6. Include a screen shot of the issue. Make sure the screen shot includes the entire window.

Optionally, we would invite you to also characterize the Business Impact according to this scale.

- 1. Who is affected (franchisees/who in head office)? What proportion of franchisees?
- 2. Visibility? Estimate of how many times per month (per franchisee/affected party) this issue will be encountered.
- 3. Blocks? Does this block a process? What process is blocked?

Example Bug Report (minimal)

Summary

Franchisee does not have permission to create a new job from a customer's Accounts page.

Description

Cannot create new job from a customer's Account page.

To replicate:

- 1. Log into Business Management as a franchisee.
- 2. Go to the Accounts tab and select an account.
- 3. Click the Create New Job button.

EXPECT: A new job to be created.

ACTUAL: Error dialog "Create New Job" displays with the message "You can't perform this action on this page."

ß	All 👻 🔍 Search Accounts and more	** 🗄 ? 뵺 🐻
Business Managem Home Chatter	Accounts V Jobs V Job Offers V Job Schedule Inv	pices \lor Payments \lor "Job Planning \lor \times More \blacksquare #
Person Account Mrs. Janet Baker Title Phone(2) Email Account	t Owner ingwood Franchis 2	+ Follow Edit Delete Create New Job
DETAILS RELATED		ACTIVITY CHATTER
Account Name Mrs. Janet Baker Title	Account Owner	Log a Call Email
Mobile 0404 080 300	Email	Create new Add
Home Phone Birthdate	Phone Create New Job	Filters: All time • All activities • All types T Refresh Expand All
✓ Address Information	You can't perform this action on this page.	ters. To get things moving, add a task or set up a meeting.
Billing Address		ivities
✓ Invoice Summary Information		Cancel Save activity. Past meetings and tasks marked as done show up here.
Tax Exempt 🕚	Has Overdue Balance 🔹	Load More Past Activities 🔻
Total Invoice Amount AUD 9,962.70	Overdue Balance	
Amount Paid AUD 150.00	Debtors 0-15 days	Activity Lists Add List
Amount Outstanding () AUD 9,612.70	Debtors 16-30 days	NAME NUMBER OF TASKS COMPLETED TASKS
Credit Balance O AUD 51.00	Debtors 31-45 days	
Balance Payable AUD 9,561.70	Debtors 46+ days	
Accounts Receivable Notes		

Environment

Sandbox.

Google Chrome.

Desktop (Windows 10).

Example Bug Report (technical details)

Summary

Accounts with Financial Integration throw component error on page load

Description

In a Franchise Account already connected to Xero (e.g. HAH Prod: Ringwood East), clicking onto the Account Details screen causes the Account Code Mapping Setup dialog to appear. When it appears, it throws A Component Error exception.

Component error throws in both Chrome and Safari.

I'm logged into Golden UAT as system administrator.

To replicate

1. Go to the Accounts screen.

2. Choose the FCS Ringwood East account.

EXPECT: FCS Ringwood East account displays.

ACTUAL: FCS Ringwood East account displays, loads Account Code Mapping Setup dialog, and immediately throws Component Error.

FCS Ringwood East			+ Follow Edit
Type Phone Website 0404 030 808	Account Owner Account Site	Industry	
DETAILS RELATED	Account Code	e Mapping Setup	on Status Disconnect
Account Name FCS Ringwood East	A Component Error has occurred	!	
Master Franchise	Message		Y CHATTER
Status Active	Uncaught afterRender threw an error in 'lightmundefined]	ning:dualListbox' [Cannot read property 'filter' of	
Status Reason O	Component Descriptor		new Add
Field Manager	markup://lightning:dualListbox	Supplier	Filters: All time • All activities • All types
Timezone ① Australia Melbourne	ed.iigntning.torce.com/components/ lightning/dualListbox.js	H.validateSelection	Refresh Expand All
✓ Business Information	Line Column		SMore steps
Legal Entity Name FCS Ringwood East Pty Ltd	2 17398		steps. To get things moving, add a task or set up a meeting.
Trading Name FCS Ringwood East	Stack Trace 🗸		ities
Operating Structure O Company	H.validatoSelection()@https://fcsopsgoldenut ed.lightning.force.com/components/lightning. H.get validity()@https://fcsopsgoldenut-dev- ed.lightning.force.com/components/lightning.	tivity. Past meetings and tasks marked as done show up here.	
✓ Address Information			
Billing Address 1/9 Freeman Street Ringwood East VIC 3135 AUSTRALIA			ivity Lists
✓ Invoice Summary Information		Cancel	NUMBER OF TASKS COMPLETED TASKS
Tax Exempt	Has Overdue Balance		

Error details

Uncaught afterRender threw an error in 'lightning:dualListbox' [Cannot read property 'filter' of undefined]

Message

markup://lightning:dualListbox

Component Descriptor

https://fcsopsgoldenut-dev-ed.lightning.force.com/components/lightning/dualListbox.js

Function

H.validateSelection

Stack Trace

H.validateSelection()@https://fcsopsgoldenut-dev-ed.lightning.force.com/components/lightning/dualListbox.js:2:17398

H.get validity()@https://fcsopsgoldenut-dev-ed.-

lightning.force.com/components/lightning/dualListbox.js:2:9567

Environment

Production Google Chrome OR Safari (BUT NOT Firefox). MacOS 10.13.

Example Bug Report (medium complexity replication)

Headline

Events on job calendar are clickable only once per instantiation.

Description

You can only cause the Event dialog to appear on an event in the calendar ONCE per instance. After you've used up your one click, you have to reload the calendar in order to cause the Event dialog to re-appear.

To replicate:

1. Open calendar.

2. Click on an event. The Event dialog box appears.

3. Click the **Cancel** button.

4. Click again on the same event.

EXPECT: Event dialog to re-appear.

ACTUAL: Event object is not clickable (does not show clickable mouse pointer; clicking on it elicits no response).

Further:

5. Click on another event. The **Event** dialog box appears. (So, it's only the event that was clicked that has become unclickable; not all events on calendar.)

6. Click Cancel.

7. Click again on the same event.

EXPECT 1: Event dialog to re-appear.

EXPECT 2: Event object unclickable.

ACTUAL: Event object is not clickable.

Environment

Safari & Chrome

Mac OS 10.12

Business Impact

- » Who affected: All franchisees, Users of Job Calendar.
- » Visibility: 40 times per month per franchisee.

» Block: None.

Granting Account Login Access

Sometimes, in working with you on a service request, our customer support team may need access to your environment. Here is how to provide the access to our customer support team.

To provide our customer support team access to your system

1. Select your account **Settings**.

FRANCHISE SOLUTIONS	All 💌 Q. Search Salesforce	1
Business Manage Home Chatter Accounts V Jobs V Job Off	rs 🗸 Job Schedule Invoices 🗸 Payments 🗸 Customer Feedback 🗸 Contacts 🤟	Material Price Lists V Files V Rep
Quarterly Performance	As of 02/03/2018 12:10:57 PM 2	Assistant Settings Log Out
CLOSED AUD 80,000 OPEN (>70%) AUD 80,000 GOAL N		USERNAMES
		© support@gha.fcs.com ghomesaus.my.salesforce.com
1604		2 DISPLAY DENSITY
120x		Nothing needs your V Comfy
		Compact
80x		OPTIONS
404		Switch to Salesforce Classic () Add Username
Jan Feb	Mar	
Closed Goal	Closed + Open (>70%)	
Today's Events	Today's Tasks 🛛 🐺 👻	
Looks like you're free and clear the rest of the day.	Nothing due today. Be a go-getter, and check back soon.	
View Calendar	View All	

2. Select the **Grant Account Login Access** page. Then select an appropriate **Access Duration** from the **Franchise Cloud Solutions Support** user.

FRANCHISE	All 🔻	Q. Search Salesforce			🔄 🖬 ? 🌣 🖡 🦱
Business Manage	Home Chatter Accounts v Jobs v Job Offers v Job	:hedule Invoices 🗸 Payments 🗸	Customer Feedback \lor Contacts \lor	Material Price Lists \checkmark Files \lor Reports \lor	Dashboards 🗸 More 🕷 🥒
Q Quick Find	Grant Account Login Access				
Advanced User Details Approver Settings Authentication Settings for External Systems Change My Password Connections	Grant Account Login Access To assist with support issues, you may grant your administrator or support person Compares Street Vy Username: Terra, inelativation distribution, dama	el the ability to login as you and access your d	18.		Help for this Page 📀
Grant Account Login Access	Grant Access To		Access Duration	_2	
Language & Time Zone Login History Personal Information Security Central	Salesforce.com Support DocuSign, Inc. Support] Franchies Cloud Selatons Support] Netex Support]		No Access No Access 1 Day (exp. 30)06/2019 3 Days (exp. 50)06/2019 1 Week (exp. 50)09/2019 1 Week (exp. 50)09/2019		
> Display & Layout		Save	1 Month (exp. 29/06/20	19)	
> Email					
> Chatter	1				
> Calendar & Reminders					
> Desktop Add-Ons					
> Import					

3. Press **Save**. Our support team will be able to access the system during the period of time you have granted.

		All 💌 🔍 Search Salesforce			🔄 🖬 ? 🌣 🖡 🦱
Business Manage	Home Chatter Accounts \checkmark Jobs \checkmark Job Offers	Job Schedule Invoices ~ Payments ~	Customer Feedback \checkmark Contacts \vee Material Price Lists	✓ Files ✓ Reports ✓	Dashboards 🗸 More 🛛 🥒
Q. Quick Find My Personal Information Advanced User Details Approver Settings Authentication Settings for	Grant Account Login Access Grant Account Login Access To assist with support taxes, you may grant your administrator or su	port personnel the ability to login as you and access your dat	A		Note for this Page 🔮
External Systems Change My Password	Changes Saved				
Connections	My Usemame: loryn.jenkins@nfctrial01.demo				
Grant Account Login Access	Grant Access To Salastime com Sumont		Access Duration		
Language & Time Zone	DoruSian Inc. Sumont		No Access		
Login History	Franchise Cloud Solutions Support		1 Week (exp. 5/06/2019)		
Personal Information	Nintex Support		No Access		
Security Central					
olay & Layout		Save			
ail					
atter					
endar & Reminders					
ktop Add-Ons					
port					
- A					

You can revoke access at any time.